

THAI

BASIC COURSE

Volume 2



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and ABSORN TRYON

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price \$3.75

THAI BASIC COURSE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Volume 2

LESSON 21.

BASIC DIALOG	327
Questions on the Basic Dialog	328
Notes on the Basic Dialog	328
Grammar Notes	329
1. Responses to <u>paj jannaj</u>	329
2. Use of <u>phaa</u> ... <u>paj</u> and <u>aw</u> ... <u>paj</u>	330
3. <u>maa naan lésw</u> Used to Indicate 'Action long in Process'	330
DRILLS	331
EXERCISES	344
VOCABULARY	345

LESSON 22.

BASIC DIALOG	347
Notes on the Basic Dialog	348
Grammar Notes	349
1. <u>thfi</u> in Dates	349
2. <u>jaak</u> + <u>hâj</u> + Verb Phrase	350
DRILLS	351
EXERCISES	366
VOCABULARY	367

LESSON 23.

BASIC DIALOG	369
Notes on the Basic Dialog	370
Grammar Notes	370
1. Aspect Particles (<u>jùu</u> , <u>dâj</u> , <u>lésw</u>)	370
2. <u>thammaj</u> , Used to Indicate 'purpose' or 'explanation'	372
3. <u>thŷn</u> with <u>thammaj</u>	373
DRILLS	373
COMPREHENSION EXERCISES	382
EXERCISES	384
VOCABULARY	384

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 24.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I)	385
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I)	385
DRILLS	386
BASIC EPISODE (Part II)	394
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II)	395
EXERCISES	395
VOCABULARY	396
LESSON 25.	
BASIC DIALOG	397
Vocabulary Notes	398
DRILLS	400
EXERCISES	414
VOCABULARY	414
LESSON 26.	
BASIC DIALOG	416
Notes on the Basic Dialog	417
Grammar Notes	417
1. <u>hâj</u> + Object + Recipient	418
2. Distributive Constructions	418
3. <u>kô</u> in Parallel Sentence Constructions	419
4. <u>thán</u> + Classifier Phrase	419
5. Question + <u>dii</u> as a Request for Advice	419
DRILLS	420
EXERCISES	439
VOCABULARY	440
LESSON 27.	
BASIC DIALOG	442
Notes on the Basic Dialog	443
Grammar Notes	443
1. <u>hâj</u> (all uses)	443
2. <u>bòok</u> and Other Verbs with <u>hâj</u> as Causative	444
3. <u>een</u> as Subject Modifier	444
DRILLS	445
EXERCISES	469
VOCABULARY	470
LESSON 28.	
BASIC DIALOG	472
Grammar Notes	473

THAI BASIC COURSE

1. Reduplicated Stative Verbs in Affirmative Requests	473
2. <u>òk</u> in Statements of Negation or Contradiction	473
3. <u>na</u> / <u>ná</u> as a Comment	474
4. Use of <u>sí</u> , (<u>si</u> , <u>sí</u>) in Request	474
5. <u>kô lěəw kan</u> to Indicate Preference for a Particular Course of Action	474
DRILLS	475
EXERCISES	484
VOCABULARY	485
LESSON 29.	
BASIC DIALOG	487
Notes on the Basic Dialog and Other Notes	488
Grammar Notes	489
1. <u>sət</u> and <u>than</u> as <u>Completive</u> Verbs	489
2. <u>maj</u> as Voluntary Choice Question Word	489
3. <u>rypláaw</u> as 'Past time' Question Word	490
4. <u>thə</u> in Suggestions	490
5. <u>dǎaw</u> as a Sentence Connective	490
DRILLS	491
EXERCISES	515
VOCABULARY	516
LESSON 30.	
BASIC EPISODE (Part I)	518
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part I)	519
BASIC EPISODE: A VISIT TO THE SUNDAY MARKET	519
Questions on the Basic Episode (Part II)	520
Grammar Notes	521
1. <u>mýa</u> in Time Constructions	521
2. <u>sət</u> and <u>còp</u> Compared in Usage	522
DRILLS	523
VOCABULARY	529
LESSON 31.	
BASIC DIALOG	530
Grammar Notes	531
1. <u>hǎa</u> with <u>phóp</u> / <u>dâj</u> / <u>cəə</u>	531
2. <u>kwaa</u> after Stative Verbs	532
3. <u>khít</u> + <u>janṇaj</u> / <u>araj</u>	533
DRILLS	534
EXERCISES	550
VOCABULARY	551

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON 32.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part II)	553
Vocabulary Notes	554
Grammar Notes	556
<u>pa.j</u> and <u>maa</u> as Direction Words	556
DRILLS	557
EXERCISES	569
VOCABULARY	570
LESSON 33.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part III)	572
Grammar Notes	573
1. Use of <u>kô dâj</u>	573
2. <u>jàak</u> Versus <u>jaak dâj</u>	573
3. Two Types of Noun Compounds	574
VOCABULARY NOTES	575
DRILLS	576
EXERCISES	582
VOCABULARY	583
LESSON 34.	
BASIC DIALOG (Part IV)	586
Grammar Notes	587
1. <u>sĭa</u> , <u>òok</u> , <u>càaj</u> + <u>nən</u>	587
2. Sentence / NP + <u>khrop</u>	588
VOCABULARY NOTES	588
DRILLS	589
EXERCISES	598
VOCABULARY	598
LESSON 35.	
REVIEW DIALOG	601
Grammar Notes	603
Use of <u>khÿyn</u> and <u>lon</u> with Stative Verbs	603
DRILLS	604
EXERCISES	621
VOCABULARY	622
LESSON 36.	
BASIC DIALOG	624
Vocabulary Notes	625
Grammar Notes	626
1. Types of Comparison	626
2. Equational Sentences	627
3. Sentences + <u>dii kwàa</u>	628

THAI BASIC COURSE

DRILLS	628
EXERCISES	643
VOCABULARY	645
 LESSON 37.	
BASIC DIALOG	647
Vocabulary Notes	648
Grammar Notes	650
1. Verbs of Measurement with Metric Classifiers ..	650
2. An Optional Transformation	650
Chart I: <u>Dimensions</u>	651
DRILLS	652
EXERCISES	661
VOCABULARY	662
 LESSON 38.	
BASIC DIALOG	666
Vocabulary Notes	667
Grammar Notes	670
1. Noun Classifiers	670
2. Nominalization (<u>thîi</u> + VP)	673
DRILLS	673
EXERCISES	682
VOCABULARY	682
 LESSON 39.	
BASIC DIALOG	687
Grammar Notes	688
1. Types of Noun Phrases:	
(a) Noun + Stative Verbs	688
(b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verbs	689
DRILLS	690
EXERCISES	712
VOCABULARY	713
 LESSON 40.	
BASIC DIALOG	716
Vocabulary Notes	717
Grammar Notes	719
1. <u>châan</u> in Compounds	719
2. Completive Verbs	719
3. Pronoun Immediately After its Antecedent	720

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. Constructions with <u>jjym</u>	720
5. Constructions with <u>faak</u>	721
6. <u>tham dūaj</u> + Materials	721
DRILLS	722
EXERCISES	734
VOCABULARY	736

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

21.0 BASIC DIALOG: Planning a Trip to the Floating Market

- A: wantĥi cèt meesăa níi
pen wanjùt
khun wâan máj
April 7th is a holiday.
Are you free?
- B: wantĥi cèt tron kawan
araj khráp
What day of the week
is the 7th?
- A: wancan
Monday.
- B: năn phǒm wâan khráp
khun mií thúra araj rěkháp
Then I'm free.
You have something in
mind?
- A: jàak ca chuan paj thĥaw
talàat náam
I'd like to invite you
to go to the Floating
Market.
- B: dii thiidiaw khráp
phǒm jàak paj maa naan lésw,
tèc mâj mií ookàat
raw ca paj kan janĥaj khráp
Very good.
I've been wanting to go
for a long time, but
haven't had the chance.
How shall we go?
- A: ca năn rót paj bân phĥan
phǒm kòon, lésw ca paj loĥ
rya thĥinân
We'll go by car to the
house of a friend of
mine and then get in a
boat there.
- B: bân kháw jùu rim khloon
rěkháp
His house is on the edge
of the canal, eh?
- A: khráp
kháw ca phaa raw paj duu
talàat náam
Right.
He will take us to see
the Floating Market.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- B: raw ca phóp kan thîinǎj Where'll we meet?
- A: phǒm ca paj ráp khun thîi bâan I'll pick you up at
weelaa sǎoŋ moonŋ cháaw home at 8 a.m.
- B: phǒm khuan ca aw araj paj bâan What should I take with
me?
- A: aw nǎen paj sýy khǎoŋ kàp Take some money for
klǐŋthàajrûup kô phoo léew shopping and your camera.
khráp That'll be enough.

21.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC DIALOG

1. khun A kàp khun B ca paj thîaw thîinǎj kan
2. kháw ca paj kan mýaràj
3. khraj chuan khraj
4. khun B jàak paj thîaw talàat náam máj
5. kháw ca paj kan janŋaj
6. khraj ca phaa kháw paj duu talàat náam
7. khun B bòok háj khun A aw araj paj bâan

21.2 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) wâan when used with people means 'free' in the sense of 'unoccupied, at leisure, not busy'.
- b) tronŋ kàp (ka) means 'correspond to, agree with, coincide with' and it is used to indicate correspondence in time, such as the date with the day of the week, years of the Christian era with those of the Buddhist, etc.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) chæn 'to invite' is used for formal invitations. It carries the meaning that the person issuing the invitation is acting as the host.

chuan 'to invite' is less formal. It indicates that the person making the request is urging someone to join him in some activity.

21.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The question $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} \text{jannaj}$ 'How are you going?' can be answered in several ways.

	Type of Vehicle		Meaning
(1) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\}$	rótfaj	(No destination given)	'train'
(2) $\begin{array}{l} \text{nân} \\ \text{lon} \\ \text{khÿn} \\ \text{khàp} \\ \text{thìip} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l} \text{rót túktúk} \\ \text{rya} \\ \text{khryânbin} \\ \text{rótjon} \\ \text{càkrajaan} \end{array}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	$\begin{array}{l} \text{'3 wheeled} \\ \text{bus'} \\ \text{'boat'} \\ \text{'plane'} \\ \text{'car'} \\ \text{'bicycle'} \end{array}$
(3) $\begin{array}{l} \text{bin} \\ \text{dæn} \end{array}$		$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination}$	$\begin{array}{l} \text{'to fly'} \\ \text{'to walk'} \end{array}$
(4) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Destination} + \underline{\text{dooj}}$	rótmee		'bus'

The construction with dooj (4) is used largely in written language or formal speech.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) The verb phaa 'to escort, to take' normally has sentence complements as indicated in the following:

(1) kháw phaa...					
(2)	raw	paj...			
(3)	raw		duu	talàat	náam
kháw	phaa	raw	paj	duu	talàat náam

'He escorted us to (go see) the Floating Market.'

phaa is used when referring to human beings. When objects are referred to aw 'to take,' is used. When the direction of the action is away from the speaker paj is used with phaa or aw; when it is toward the speaker, maa.

Observe the following construction with aw:

(1) kháw aw ηəən				
(2)		ηəən	maa...	
(3) kháw				sýy khǎɔŋ
kháw	aw	ηəən	maa	sýy khǎɔŋ

'He brought money for buying things.'

On occasion Thai speakers may use aw... paj/maa instead of phaa... paj/maa when referring to human beings.

- c) When the Verb Phrase maa naan léəw is added to a sentence, it indicates that the action referred to in the sentence has been in process for a long period of time and is still going on. (See 23.2.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

SENTENCE	+	<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
phǒm jàak phóp khun		<u>maa</u>	<u>naan</u>	<u>lěw</u>
(I want meet you		come	long time	already)
'I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.'				

21.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan ankhāan	Tuesday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan sùk	Friday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship

b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. wanníi pen wancan	wanníi wan araj phrûnníi lâ mýawaanníi lâ	wan can wan ankhāan wan aathít
Today is Monday.	What day is it? Tomorrow? Yesterday?	Monday. Sunday. Sunday.

THAI BASIC COURSE

<p>2. m̄yawaanníi pen wansǎw</p> <p>Yesterday was Saturday.</p>	<p>wanníi wan araj phrûnníi lâ m̄yawaanníi lâ lésw maryynníi lâ</p> <p>What day is today? Tomorrow? Yesterday? The day after tomorrow?</p>	<p>wan aathít wan can wan sǎw wan an̄khaan</p> <p>Sunday. Monday. Saturday. Tuesday.</p>
---	--	--

<p>3. phrûnníi pen wan pháryhàt</p> <p>Tomorrow is Thursday.</p>	<p>wanníi wan araj m̄yawaanníi lâ phrûnníi lâ lésw maryynníi lâ</p> <p>What is today? Yesterday? Tomorrow? And the day after tomorrow?</p>	<p>wan phút wan an̄khaan wan phryhàt wan sùk</p> <p>Wednesday. Tuesday. Thursday. Friday.</p>
--	--	---

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw chuan phǒm paj th̄law talàat nám
He invited me to go to the Floating Market.
2. kháw chuan phǒm paj thamnaan kàp kháw
He asked me to go work for him.
3. phǒm chuan kháw khuj ryân myan̄thaj
I invited him to converse about Thailand.
4. phanrajaa khun chuan phanrajaa phǒm paj s̄ykh̄d̄oŋ phrûnníi
Your wife asked my wife to go shopping tomorrow.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. phyân phǒm chuan phǒm paj sýy bâan klâj klâj ka kháw
My friend tried to talk me into buying a house near him.
6. kháw chuan phǒm thaán lâw thǐi bâan
He invited me to have a drink at his house.
7. phǒm ca chuan phyânphyân paj thaán khâaw thǐi bâan
I'm going to invite some friends to eat at my house.

d) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- phǒm jàak paj maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to go for a long time.
1. phóp khun phǒm jàak phóp khun maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to meet you for a long time.
2. hěn kháw phǒm jàak hěn kháw maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to see her for a long time.
3. thǎam khun phǒm jàak thǎam khun maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to ask you (that) for a long time.
4. bòok kháw phǒm jàak bòok kháw maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to tell him (that) for a long time.
5. phûut rýaṅṅníi kàp khun phǒm jàak ca phûut rýaṅṅníi ka khun maa naan lésw
I have been wanting to talk about this matter with you for a long time.

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj jaṇṇaj 'How are you going?'	paj rôtmee By bus.
2. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôtjon By car.
3. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôtfaḷ By train.
4. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôt thésksîi By taxi.
5. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rya By boat.
6. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rya } bin khrÿaṇ } By plane.
7. paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôt sǎamlóo By samlor.

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rôt	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôt
2. rôt thésksîi	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôt thésksîi
3. rôtfaḷ	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôtfaḷ
4. khrÿanbin	paj jaṇṇaj	paj khrÿanbin
5. rya phÿan	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rya
6. rôtmee	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôtmee
7. rôt	paj jaṇṇaj	paj rôt phÿan
8. rôt sǎamlóo	paj jaṇṇaj	paj sǎamlóo

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. paj jaṇṇaj 'How are you going?'	nāṇ rót paj By car.
2. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rótmeē paj By bus.
3. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rót thésksîi By taxi.
4. paj jaṇṇaj	khàp rót paj Drive (a car).
5. paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rya paj By boat.
6. paj jaṇṇaj	bin paj Fly.
7. paj jaṇṇaj	thîip càkkrajaan Ride a bicycle. paj

h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nāṇ rót	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rót paj
2. nāṇ rótmeē	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rótmeē paj
3. nāṇ thésksîi	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ thésksîi paj
4. khàp rót	paj jaṇṇaj	khàp rót paj
5. nāṇ rya	paj jaṇṇaj	nāṇ rya paj
6. bin	paj jaṇṇaj	bin paj
7. thîip càkkrajaan	paj jaṇṇaj	thîip càkkrajaan paj

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. A: cháaw cháaw, khun paj thamnaan janñaj
How do you go to work mornings?
B: phǒm khàp rót paj
I drive.
2. A: phanrajaa khǒŋ khun paj thamnaan janñaj
How does your wife go to work?
B: phǒm paj sòŋ kháw
I take her.
3. A: lûuksǎaw khǒŋ khun paj roonrian janñaj
How does your daughter go to school?
B: kháw paj rót phyân
She goes in a friend's car.
4. A: phyân khun khonnán paj (ajútthajaa) janñaj
How does that friend of yours go to Ayuthaya?
B: kháw nâŋ rya paj.
By boat.
5. A: naaj khǒŋ khun ca paj ameerikaa janñaj
How is your boss going to America?
B: kháw ca bin paj
He'll fly.
6. A: thammadaa, khun maa roonrian janñaj
How do you usually come to school?
B: phǒm deen maa.
I walk.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. A: phyân khǎonkhun maa roonrian janṅaj
How does your friend come to school?

B: kháw maa rǒtmeē.
By bus.

8. A: khun cǎon maa roonrian janṅaj
How does John come to school?

B: kháw thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa
He rides a bike.

j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun cǎon thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa roonrian	khun cǎon maa roonrian janṅaj How did John come to school?	kháw thǐip cǎkkrajaan maa He rode a bike.
2. phanrajaa khun cim maa sǎon sǎamii kháw thúkwan	khun cim maa roonrian janṅaj How did Jim come to school?	phanrajaa kháw maa sǎon His wife brought him.
3. khun sǔnthoon bin paj ameerikaa	khun sǔnthoon paj janṅaj How did Mr. Sunthorn go?	kháw { bin paj paj khryānbin He flew.
4. khun thoom nān rya paj júróop	khun thoom paj janṅaj How did Tom go?	kháw { nān rya paj paj rya He went by boat.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | | |
|----|--|--|--------|---------------------------------------|
| 5. | khun praphâat nân
rótmeē paj thamṇaan | khun praphâat paj
thamṇaan jaṇṇaj
How did Prapas
go to work? | kháw { | nân rótmeē paj
paj rótmeē |
| | | | | By bus. |
| 6. | chaawnaa dēen paj
naa | chaawnaa paj naa
jaṇṇaj
How did the farmer
to the field? | | kháw dēen paj

He walked. |
| 7. | phanrajaa kháw nân
sǎamlóo paj talàat | phanrajaa kháw
paj talàat jaṇṇaj
How did his wife
go to the market? | kháw { | paj sǎamlóo
nân rót sǎamlóo
paj |
| | | | | By samlor. |

k) Substitution Drill (Use Chart I with this Drill.)

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|-------------------|--|
| | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rót</u>
He's getting in (to) the car. |
| 1. rótmeē | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rótmeē</u>
He's boarding the bus. |
| 2. rótfaj | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rótfaj</u> .
He's boarding the train. |
| 3. khrÿanbin | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>khrÿanbin</u>
He's boarding the plane.. |
| 4. rót
sǎamlóo | kháw kamlan khÿn <u>rót sǎamlóo</u>
He's getting into the samlor. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

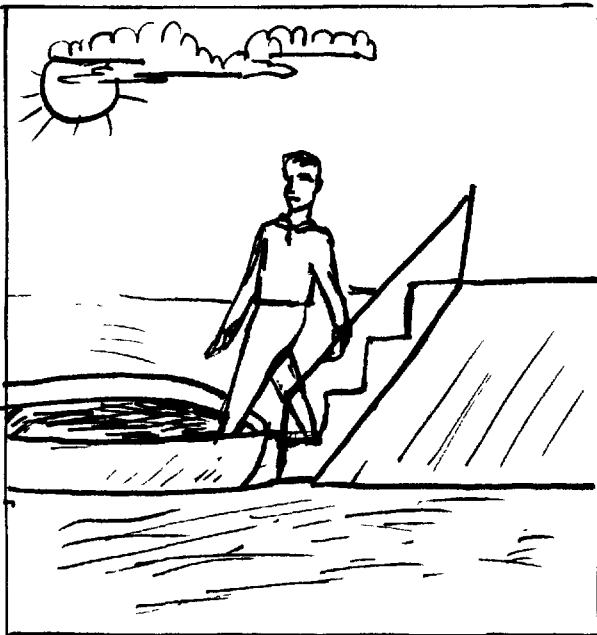
CHART I



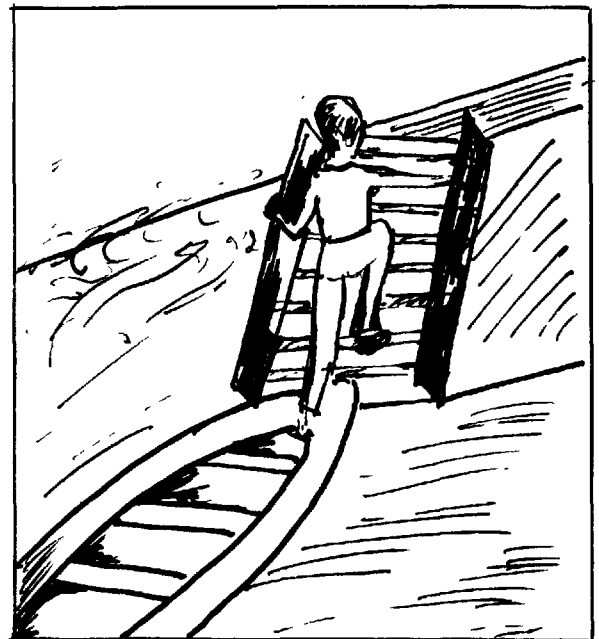
kháw kamləŋ khÿn rôt



kháw kamləŋ loŋ (càak) rôt



kháw kamləŋ loŋ rya



kháw kamləŋ khÿn càak rya

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw kamlan lon <u>rót</u> He's getting out of the car.
1. rótmee	kháw kamlan lon (càak) <u>rótmee</u> . He's getting out of the bus.
2. rófaj	kháw kamlan lon (càak) <u>rófaj</u> He's getting out of the train.
3. khryânbin	kháw kamlan lon (càak) <u>khryânbin</u> He's disembarking from the plane.

m) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw phaa raw <u>paj duu talàat náam</u> He took us to see the Floating Market.
1. paj thîaw	kháw phaa raw <u>paj thîaw</u> talàat náam He took us on a trip to the Floating Market.
2. chianmàj	kháw phaa raw paj thîaw <u>chianmàj</u> He took us on a trip to Chiangmai.
3. paj thaان aahǎan thîi ráan	kháw phaa raw <u>paj thaان</u> <u>aahǎan thîi ráan</u> He took us to eat at that restaurant.
4. maa thaان aahǎan thîinîi	kháw phaa raw <u>maa thaان</u> <u>aahǎan thîinîi</u> He took us to eat here.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. sýy khǎoŋ kháw phaa raw maa sýy khǎoŋ thîinîi
He took us shopping here.
6. maa loŋ rya kháw phaa raw maa loŋ rya thîinîi
He took us into the boat.
7. maa sòŋ kháw phaa raw maa sòŋ thîinîi
He took us here.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- kháw aw náŋsýy paj thîinôn
He took the books over there.
1. kâwîi kháw aw kâwîi paj thîinôn
He took the chairs over there.
2. hôŋnooŋ kháw aw kâwîi paj hôŋnooŋ
He took the chairs into the bedroom.
3. náŋsýy kháw aw náŋsýy paj hôŋnooŋ
He took the books into the bedrooms.
4. bâan kháw aw náŋsýy paj bâan
He took the books home.
5. klôŋthàajrûup kháw aw klôŋthàajrûup paj bâan
He took the camera home.
6. thîi ráan kháw aw klôŋthàajrûup paj thîi ráan
He took the camera to the shop.

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw <u>nánsǎy</u> maa thǐinǐi He brought the books here.
1. kâwǐi	kháw aw <u>kâwǐi</u> maa thǐinǐi He brought the chairs here.
2. hǝnǐi	kháw aw kâwǐi maa <u>hǝnǐi</u> He brought the chairs into this room.
3. aahǎan	kháw aw <u>aahǎan</u> maa hǝnǐi He brought the food into this room.
4. klǝnthàajrûup	kháw aw <u>klǝnthàajrûup</u> maa hǝnǐi He brought a camera into this room.

p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	kháw aw aahǎan maa thaan (thǐinǐi) He brought food to eat here.
1. nǝen, sýy khǝn	kháw aw <u>nǝen</u> maa <u>sýy khǝn</u> He brought money for shopping.
2. nánsǎy, àan	kháw aw <u>nánsǎy</u> maa <u>àan</u> He brought books to read.
3. rót, kêe	kháw aw <u>rót</u> maa <u>kêe</u> He brought cars to be repaired.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. klônṭhàaj rûup, kháw aw klônṭhàajrûup maa thàaj rûup
thàaj rûup He brought a camera for picture taking.
5. pàakaa, khǎan kháw aw pàakaa maa khǎan
He brought a pen to write with.

Change thǎinǎi to thǎinôn and repeat the drill using paj instead of maa.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. mii thúra araj lǎ | Do you have something in mind? |
| 2. mii khamthǎam araj máj | Any questions? |
| 3. mii khwaamhǎn araj máj | Any comments? |
| 4. rúucàk khraj máj | Recognize anybody? |
| 5. wanjút, ca paj nǎj rýplàaw | Are you going anywhere this holiday? |
| 6. ca kin araj máj | Would you like something to eat? |

21.5 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES

Listen to the episodes and answer the questions:

- a) khun cœn nǎn rya paj ajútthajaa . kháw loṇ thǎi thǎa
phrácan . kháw khǎn rya thǎi talàat ajútthajaa
1. khun cœn paj nǎj
 2. kháw paj jaṇṇaj
 3. kháw loṇ rya thǎinǎj
 4. kháw khǎn rya thǎinǎj

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) míssís brawn nâṅ thésksíi paj pratuunáam . kháw khÿn rôt thîi síjÊek râatprasǒṅ . kháw loṅ rôt thîi nâa juusôm
1. míssís brawn paj nǎj
 2. kháw paj jaṅṅaj
 3. kháw khÿn rôt thîinǎj
 4. kháw loṅ rôt thîinǎj
- c) místə samít paj bân khun phôo khun mēs klâj klâj kàp bósstân . kháw khÿn khryāṅbin thîi woochintân . kháw loṅ thîi bósstân
1. místə samít paj nǎj
 2. kháw paj jaṅṅaj
 3. kháw khÿn khryāṅbin thîinǎj
 4. kháw loṅ thîinǎj

21.6 EXERCISES

Using the format of the basic dialog as a guide plan an excursion to some point of interest. Keep the following points in mind:

1. Date and time of the trip,
2. The place,
3. The means of conveyance,
4. The persons included,
5. The arrangements for meeting beforehand,
6. What should be taken along, and
7. Any other relevant factors (weather conditions, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

21.7 VOCABULARY

ookàat (khrán)	chance
bín	to fly
càkkrajaan (khan)	a bicycle
chuan	to invite, urge, persuade someone to do something
dooj	by (means of transportation)
kêe	to repair, correct
khuj	to converse
klîŋthaajrûup (an)	camera
lâw (khùat)	liquor, alcohol (bottle)
míssís	Mrs.
míste	Mr.
naaj (khon)	boss
naan	to be long (in time)
phrácan (thâa)	Phracan ('moon'), name of the port in Bangkok across the Chaophraya River
phaa... { paj { maa	to take, or escort someone
phoo	to be enough, sufficient
rim (rim)	edge, rim
rótjon (khan)	car, motor car
rót sǎamlóo (khan)	samlor
rót túk túk	a small 3-wheeled car used mainly as taxis
rya bín (lam, khrýan)	airplane
khrýan	
talàat náam	the Floating Market in Thonburi

THAI BASIC COURSE

thâa (thâa, hèn)	port, harbor
thàajrûup	to take a picture
thésksîi (khan)	taxi
thiidiaw	exactly, quite, very
thîip	to ride, pedal
thammadaa	usually, normally
tron { ka-	to correspond to, agree with,
{ kâp	coincide with
wan aṅkhaan	Tuesday
wan athít	Sunday
wan can	Monday
wan phrá	Buddhist day of worship
wan ph(a)rýhàt	Thursday
wan phút	Wednesday
wan sǎw	Saturday
wan sùk	Friday
wâaṅ	to be free, not busy, not occupied

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

22.0 BASIC DIALOG: An American Contacts a Thai Friend

A Voice:	hânloo, thîinîi kâaw nỳn thoo pèet sũun há	Hello, this is 91280.
David:	khǎo phũut kakhun sũnthoon nòoj, dâj máj há	Could I speak with Mr. Sunthorn?
Voice:	roo dǎaw nahá	Just a minute.
Sunthorn:	sũnthoon phũut khráp	Sunthorn speaking.
David:	sawàtdii khráp phǎm, deewít, phũut khráp cam phǎm dâj máj	Hello, It's David speaking. Remember me?
Sunthoon:	ôo, khun deewít lǎe maa thỳn tântèe mỳaràj há	Oh, it's David! When did you get here?
David:	mỳa wansùk thîi léew	Last Friday.
Sunthorn:	khun òok càak ameerikaa mỳaràj há	When did you leave America?
David:	mỳa sǎon dyan kòon há raaw wanthîi kâaw kumphaa	Two months ago. Around February the ninth.
Sunthorn:	weelaanîi khun phák thîinǎj há	Where are you staying?
David:	thîi hooten imperian tronj sooj rûamrýdii	At the Imperial Hotel, On Ruam Rudee Lane.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Sunthorn:	jenníi wâaŋ máj há jàak ca chœen maa thaan khâaw thîi bâan	Are you free this evening? I'd like to invite you to eat at my house.
David:	jàa rópkuuan ləj há	Don't put yourself out.
Sunthorn:	mâj rópkuuan rək há phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan phǒm dūaj	No trouble at all. I'd like you to know where my house is.
David:	khòpkhun mâak há bâan khun jùu thîinǎj lahá phǒm paj mâj thùuk	Thanks very much. Where is your house? I don't know how to get there.
Sunthorn:	phǒm ca paj ráp khun thîi hooten raaw sák hòk moon khrÿŋ, nahá	I'll pick you up at the hotel. Around 6:30, O.K.?
David:	tòk loŋ há phǒm ca khəoj jùu nâa hooten	Right. I'll wait for you in front of the hotel.

22.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) There are three ways to express the meaning of 'ago' in Thai:

$$(m\hat{y}a +) \text{ Period of Time } + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{k\grave{o}on} \\ \underline{th\hat{i}i} \underline{l\acute{e}ew} \\ \underline{maa} \underline{l\acute{e}ew} \end{array} \right.$$

THAI BASIC COURSE

Example: (m̄ya) sǎam aathít kòon
 (m̄ya) sǎam aathít thîi léew 'three weeks ago'
 (m̄ya) sǎam aathít maa léew

b) tântèe 'since, from (such and such time) may be used with the time expressions above:

tântèe (m̄ya) sǒn dyan kòon 'since two months ago!

It may also be used with particular points in time, as in

tântèe (m̄ya) (dyan) phrýtsacikaa 'Since November'

c) khòosǒ (ค.ศ.) is an abbreviation for khrit sàkàràat (A.D. or Christian Era).

phòosǒ (พ.ศ.) is an abbreviation of phútthá sàkàràat (B.E. or Buddhist Era).

22.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) The following constructions are used in asking and giving the date:

Q: wanní (pen) wan thîi	thâwràj
A: wanní (pen) wan thîi	pèet (meesǎa [jon])
'What day of the month is it? It's the eighth (of April)!'	

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) The verb jàak 'want to, would like' normally has a sentence as a complement.

When the subject of the main verb (jàak) and of its complement are the same, the subject of the complement does not occur.

A:	phǒm	jàak	....	'I would like ...'
B:	phǒm		phóp khun	'I meet you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	phóp khun	'I would like to meet you.'

When the subject of the main verb and of the complement are different and the meaning is causative (i.e. 'to have or cause someone to do something'), both subjects occur and hâj occurs after jàak.

A:	phǒm	jàak	...	'I would like ...'
B:			kháw phóp khun	'He meets you.'
A/B:	phǒm	jàak	<u>hâj</u> kháw phóp khun	'I would like him to meet you.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sìi	wanníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date today?	wanníi wanthîi sìi It's the fourth.
2. hâa	phrûnníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date tomorrow?	phrûnníi wanthîi hâa It's the fifth.
3. sǎam	mýawaanníi wanthîi thâwraj What was the date yesterday.	mýawaanníi wanthîi sǎam It was the third.
4. hòk	maryynníi wanthîi thâwraj What is the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthîi hòk It's the sixth.
5. sìp sìi	wanníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date today?	wanníi wanthîi sìp sìi It's the fourteenth.
6. sìp hâa	phrûnníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date tomorrow.	phrûnníi wanthîi sìp hâa It's the fifteenth.
7. sìp hòk	maryynníi wanthîi thâwraj What's the date the day after tomorrow?	maryynníi wanthîi sìp hòk It's the sixteenth.
8. sìp sǒŋ	waansyynn(níi) wanthîi thâwraj What was the day before yesterday?	waansyynníi wanthîi sìp sǒŋ It was the twelfth.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mók-karaakhom, rêεk	dyan <u>mók-karaa khom</u> ¹ pen dyan rêεk khǒŋ pii January is the first month of the year.
2. kumphaaphan, sǒŋ	dyan <u>kumphaaphan</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sǒŋ</u> khǒŋ pii February is the second month of the year.
3. miinaakhom, sǎam	dyan <u>miinaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sǎam</u> khǒŋ pii March is the third month of the year.
4. meesǎajon, sîi	dyan <u>meesǎajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>sîi</u> khǒŋ pii April is the fourth month of the year.
5. phrýtsaphaakhom, hâa	dyan <u>phrýtsaphaakhom</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hâa</u> khǒŋ pii May is the fifth month of the year.
6. míthunaajon, hòk	dyan <u>míthunaajon</u> pen dyan thîi <u>hòk</u> khǒŋ pii June is the sixth month of the year.

¹Months having 31 days end in khom; those having 30 end with jon. Only February ends in phan. In spoken Thai these endings are usually omitted.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. karákkadaakhom, cèt sǐnhǎakhom pen dyan thǐipèet khǒon pii
August is the eighth month of the year.
8. kanjaajon, kâaw kanjaajon pen dyan thǐi kâaw khǒon pii
September is the ninth month of the year.
9. tulaakhom, sǐp tulaakhom pen dyan thǐi sǐp khǒon pii
October is the tenth month of the year.
10. phrýt(sa) cikaajon, phrýtsacikaajon pen dyan thǐi sǐp-èt
sǐp-èt khǒon pii
November is the eleventh month of the year.
11. thanwaakhom, sùt thanwaakhom pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒon pii
tháaj December is the last month of the year.

c) Response Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. dyan araj pen dyan thǐisǒon khǒon pii	(dyan) kumphaa(phan)
2. dyan araj pen dyan rêsk khǒon pii	(dyan) mókkaraa(khom)
3. dyan araj pen dyan sùt tháaj khǒon pii	(dyan) thanwaa(khom)
4. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi pèet khǒon pii	(dyan) sǐnhǎa(khom)
5. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi hâa khǒon pii	(dyan) phrýtsaphaa(khom)
6. dyan araj pen dyan thǐi sǎam khǒon pii	(dyan) minaa(khom)

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 7. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp-èt
khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) phrýt(sa)
cikkaa(jon) |
| 8. dyan araj pen dyan thîi cèt khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) karákkadaa(khom) |
| 9. dyan araj pen dyan thîi hòk khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) míthunaa(jon) |
| 10. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîp khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) tulaa(khom) |
| 11. dyan araj pen dyan thîi sîi khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) meesǎa(jon) |
| 12. dyan araj pen dyan thîi kâaw khǎoŋ pii | (dyan) kanjaa(jon) |

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (YEARS)

- | | | | |
|-----|---|------|--------|
| I. | 1. <u>khooŋ</u> nỳn phan cèt rǎoŋ cèt sîp hòk | 1776 | } A.D. |
| | 2. khooŋ nỳn phan cèt rǎoŋ pèet sîp kâaw | 1789 | |
| | 3. khooŋ nỳn phan pèet rǎoŋ hòk sîp sǎoŋ | 1862 | |
| | 4. khooŋ nỳn phan pèet rǎoŋ hòk sîp hâa | 1865 | |
| | 5. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rǎoŋ sîi sîp | 1940 | |
| | 6. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rǎoŋ sîi sîp pèet | 1948 | |
| | 7. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rǎoŋ hâa sîp sîi | 1954 | |
| | 8. khooŋ nỳn phan kâaw rǎoŋ hòk sîp hòk | 1966 | |
| II. | 1. <u>phooŋ</u> sǎoŋ phan sǎam rǎoŋ sîp | 2310 | } B.E. |
| | 2. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sǎam rǎoŋ jîi sîp hâa | 2325 | |
| | 3. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sîi rǎoŋ cèt sîp hâa | 2475 | |
| | 4. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan sîi rǎoŋ kâaw sîp sîi | 2494 | |
| | 5. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rǎoŋ | 2500 | |
| | 6. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rǎoŋ nỳn | 2501 | |
| | 7. phooŋ sǎoŋ phan hâa rǎoŋ kâaw | 2509 | |

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill (Use actual dates in the responses below)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pii níi pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) is this?	pii níi pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksìp kâaw It's 1969.
2. pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj cèt-sìp It's 1970.
3. pii thîilésw pen pii khoosǎo araj What year (A.D.) was last year?	pii thîi lésw pen pii khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòksìp pèet It was 1968.
4. pii níi pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) is this?	pii níi pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sìp sǎon It's 2512. (A.D. 1969)
5. pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) is next year?	pii nâa pen pii phoosǎo sǎon phan hâa rǎoj sìp sǎam It's 2513.
6. pii thîi lésw pen pii phoosǎo araj What year (B.E.) was last year?	pii thîilésw pen pii phoosǎo hâa rǎoj sìp-èt It was 2511.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
June 1, 1960	wanthîi nỳn mĩthunajon khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp
July 14, 1966	wanthîi sìp sǐi karákadaakhom khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp hòk
February 23, 1969	wanthîi jǐi-sìp sǎam kumphaaphan khoosǎo nỳn phan kâaw rǎoj hòk-sìp kâaw
May 20, B.E. 2509	wanthîi jǐi-sìp phrýtsaphaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâarǎoj kâaw
December 5, B.E. 2510	wanthîi hâa thanwaakhom phoosǎo sǎoj phan hâa rǎoj sìp

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. mỳa sǎam wan kǎon '3 days ago'
mỳa sǎam wan thǐi lésw
mỳa sǎam wan maa lésw
2. mỳa sìp wan kǎon '10 days ago'
mỳa sìp wan thǐi lésw
mỳa sìp wan maa lésw
3. mỳa sǎam aathít kǎon '3 weeks ago'
mỳa sǎam aathít thǐi lésw
mỳa sǎam aathít maa lésw

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. m̄ya h̄a dyan k̀on '5 months ago'
 m̄ya h̄a dyan th̄i l̄ēw
 m̄ya h̄a dyan maa l̄ēw
5. m̄ya h̀ok pii k̀on '6 years ago'
 m̄ya h̀ok pii th̄i l̄ēw
 m̄ya h̀ok pii maa l̄ēw

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. s̄on dyan	raw r̄ēm rian phaas̄athaj m̄yar̀aj When did we start studying Thai?	raw r̄ēm rian phaas̄athaj m̄ya s̄on dyan k̀on We started studying Thai two months ago.
2. h̄a pii	kh̄aw kh̄ēj j̀u myan̄thaj m̄yar̀aj When did he live in Thailand?	kh̄aw kh̄ēj j̀u myan̄thaj m̄ya h̄a pii k̀on He lived in Thailand five years ago.
3. s̄am dyan	kh̄aw kl̀ap paj myan̄ thaj m̄yar̀aj When did he return to Thailand?	kh̄aw kl̀ap paj myan̄ thaj m̄ya s̄am dyan k̀on He returned to Thailand three months ago.
4. s̄am s̄i wan	khun ph̀op kh̄aw m̄yar̀aj When did you meet him?	ph̀om ph̀op kh̄aw m̄ya s̄am s̄i wan k̀on I met him three or four days ago.

NOTE: Repeat the drill using ...th̄i l̄ēw and once more using ...maa l̄ēw in place of k̀on

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōṅsamùt	m̄ya sǒṅ chūamoon kòṅ khun jùu thīinǎj Where were you two hours ago?	m̄ya sǒṅ chūamoon kòṅ, phǒm jùu naj hōṅsamùt Two hours ago I was at the library.
2. duu náṅsǎy	m̄ya jīi-síp naathii maa léew, khun tham araj What were you doing ten minutes ago?	m̄ya jīi-síp naathii maa léew, phǒm duu náṅsǎy Ten minutes ago I was studying.
3. sǒṅkhláa	m̄ya sǎam aathít thīi léew khun paj nǎj Where did you go three weeks ago?	m̄ya sǎam aathít thīi léew phǒm paj sǒṅkhláa Three weeks ago I went to Songkla.
4. tham râatchakaan	m̄ya cèt pii kòṅ, kháw thamṅaan araj khráp Seven years ago what was he doing?	m̄ya cèt pii kòṅ, kháw tham râatchakaan Seven years ago he was in government service.
5. rian náṅsǎy thīi krunthêep	m̄ya hòk pii kòṅ, khun rian náṅsǎy thīi nǎj Where were you studying (going to school) six years ago.	m̄ya hòk pii kòṅ, phǒm rian náṅsǎy thīi krunthêep I was going to school in Bangkok six years ago.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>6. jùu thîi myaŋ m̄ya p̄est pii thîi lésw,
bóosatân</p> | <p>khun jùu thîi nǎj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Where were you
living eight
years ago?</p> | <p>m̄ya p̄est pii thîi lésw
phom jùu thîi myaŋ
bóosatân</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Eight years ago
I was living in
Boston.</p> |
|--|--|--|

j) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. m̄ya dyan phr̄ýtsacikaa</p>	<p>khun maa th̄yŋ n̄i t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been here?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) dyan phr̄ýtsacikaa</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since November.</p>
<p>2. m̄ya s̄oŋ dyan kòon</p>	<p>khun maa th̄yŋ n̄i t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been here?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) s̄oŋ dyan kòon</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since two months ago.</p>
<p>3. m̄ya s̄am pii maa lésw</p>	<p>khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been living in Thailand?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) s̄am pii maa lésw</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since three years ago.</p>
<p>4. m̄ya pii phoos̄o s̄oŋ phan h̄aa r̄ooj</p>	<p>khun maa jùu myaŋ thaj t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">How long have you been living in Thailand?</p>	<p>t̄ant̄è (m̄ya) pii phoos̄o s̄oŋ phan h̄aa r̄ooj</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Since B.E. 2500.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| 5. m̄ya dyan thanwaa
pii th̄il̄ésw | khun maa j̄u th̄in̄fi
t̄ant̄è m̄yaràj
How long have you
been living here? | t̄ant̄è m̄ya dyan thanwaa
pii th̄il̄ésw
Since last December. |
| 6. m̄ya s̄on
ch̄uamoon̄ k̄on | kháw paj t̄ant̄è
m̄yaràj
How long has he
been gone? | t̄ant̄è m̄ya s̄on
ch̄uamoon̄ k̄on
Since two hours ago. |
| 7. m̄ya s̄on aathít
th̄i lésw | kháw paj t̄ant̄è
m̄yaràj
How long has he
been gone? | t̄ant̄è m̄ya s̄on
aathít th̄i lésw
Since two weeks ago. |

k) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa thaán kh̄aw <u>th̄i b̄an</u> |
| 1. th̄in̄fi | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa thaán kh̄aw <u>th̄in̄fi</u>
I'd like to invite you to eat here. |
| 2. th̄iaw | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa <u>th̄iaw</u> th̄in̄fi
I'd like to invite you to go out here. |
| 3. s̄on | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa <u>s̄on</u> th̄in̄fi
I'd like to invite you to come teach here. |
| 4. w̄aj nám | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa <u>w̄aj nám</u> th̄in̄fi
I'd like to invite you to go swimming here. |
| 5. phóp kháw | j̄aak ca ch̄en maa <u>phóp kháw</u> th̄in̄fi
I'd like to invite you to meet him here. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| | jàak ca chøen paj than khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>bân</u> |
| 1. thîi ráan | jàak ca chøen paj thaan khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>ráan</u> |
| 2. thîi nân | jàak ca chøen paj thaan khâaw <u>thîi</u> <u>nân</u> |
| 3. sǒn | jàak ca chøen paj <u>sǒn</u> thîinân |
| 4. phóp kháw | jàak ca chøen paj <u>phóp</u> <u>kháw</u> thîinân |

m) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| | <u>phǒm</u> jàak phóp khun |
| 1. kháw jàak | <u>kháw</u> jàak phóp khun |
| 2. rúucàk khun | kháw jàak <u>rúucàk</u> <u>khun</u> |
| 3. paj myanṭhaj | kháw jàak <u>paj</u> <u>myanṭhaj</u> |
| 4. pen mǒɔ | kháw jàak <u>pen</u> <u>mǒɔ</u> |
| 5. sýy rót | kháw jàak <u>sýy</u> <u>rót</u> |
| 6. khàp rót pen | kháw jàak <u>khàp</u> <u>rót</u> <u>pen</u> |
| 7. phǒm | <u>phǒm</u> jàak kháp rót pen |
| 8. phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj | phǒm jàak <u>phûut</u> <u>phaasǎa</u> <u>thaj</u> <u>dâj</u> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

n) Sentence Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...
khun rúucàk bâan phǒm
2. phǒm jàak...
khun phûut phaasǎathaj kan
3. khun phôo phǒm jàak...
phǒm pen mǎo
4. phǒm jàak...
khun àan nánŕsǎy lêm níi
5. phômêe thúk khon jàak...
lûuklûuk rian roonrian diidii

Pattern 3

- phǒm jàak hâj khun rúucàk bâan
phǒm
I'd like for you to know
where my house is.
- phǒm jàak hâj khun
phûut phaasǎa thaj kan
I'd like to have you
speak Thai together.
- khun phôo phǒm jàak hâj phǒm
pen mǎo
My father would have liked
for me to become a doctor.
- phǒm jàak hâj khun àan
nánŕsǎy lêm níi
I'd like to have you
read this book.
- phômêe thúk khon jàak
hâj lûuklûuk rian roonrian dii dii
All parents would like to
have their children go to
good schools.

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Sentence Combination Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. phǒm jàak...
phǒm rúucàk kháw
2. phǒm mâj jàak
kháw maa hǎa phǒm thîinîi
3. phǒm jàak...
phanrajaa phǒm khàp rôt pen
4. phǒm mâj jàak...
phǒm jùu krunthêep
5. khun phôo khun mēe phǒm jàak...
phǒm tham ráatchakaan

Pattern 3

1. phǒm jàak rúucàk kháw
I'd like to meet him.
2. phǒm mâj jàak hâj kháw
maa hǎa phǒm thîinîi
I wouldn't like to have
him come to see me here.
3. phǒm jàak hâj phanrajaa
phǒm khàp rôt pen
I'd like to have my wife
able to drive a car.
4. phǒm mâj jàak jùu krunthêep
I wouldn't like to live
in Bangkok.
5. khun phôo khun mēe phǒm jàak
hâj phǒm tham ráatchakaan
My parents would like me to
be a government employee.

THAI BASIC COURSE

p) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mǎo	khun phǎo khun jàak hâj khun pen khruu máj Would your father like for you to be a teacher?	mâj jàak khráp, khun phǎo phǎm jàak hâj phǎm pen mǎo No, he wouldn't. My father would like for me to be a doctor.
2. tàaŋcaŋwàt	khun jàak jùu krunthêep máj Would you like to live in Bangkok?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt No, I wouldn't. I'd like to live in the provinces.
3. eesia	khun jàak paj áafarikaa máj Would you like to go to Africa?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak paj eesia No, I wouldn't. I'd like to go to Asia.
4. aahǎan thaj	khun jàak thaan aahǎan faràŋ máj Would you like to eat foreign food?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak thaan aahǎan thaj No, I wouldn't. I'd like to eat Thai food.
5. thoom	khun jàak hâj kháw rĭak khun wâa mísate braawn máj Would you like to have him call you Mr. Brown?	mâj jàak khráp, phǎm jàak hâj kháw rĭak phǎm wâa thoom No, I wouldn't.. I'd like to have him call me Tom.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. jùu kabâan khun jàak hâj phanrajaa māj jàak khráp, phǒm
 khun thamjaan nōok bâan máj jàak hâj kháv jùu kabâan
- Would you like to have your wife work (outside)?
- No, I wouldn't. I would like to have her stay at home.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Suppose today is Thursday. Focus your attention on 'wanní (today)' and notice what the days in the past weeks and the future weeks are called. Repeat the words in the left column after the instructor.

aathít thiŋléw Last week	can	Monday of last week	
	aŋkhaan	Tuesday of last week	
	phút	Wednesday of last week	
	phrýhàt	Thursday of last week	
	sùk	Friday of last week	
	sǎw	Saturday of last week	
	aathít	Sunday of last week	
aathít This week	can	mýa wan can ní	Last Monday
	aŋkhaan	mýa wan aŋkhaan ní	Last Tuesday
	phút	mýa waanní	Yesterday
	phrýhàt	wanní	Today
	sùk	phrûŋ ní	Tomorrow
	sǎw	maryynní (or) wan sǎw { ní	This coming Sunday This Saturday
	aathít	wan aathít { ní thîi ca thýŋ ní	This Sunday This Sunday

THAI BASIC COURSE

	can	wan can {nâa	Next Monday
		}thiî ca thŷn ní	This coming Monday
aathít	aŋkhaan	wan aŋkhaan nâa	Next Tuesday
nâa	phút	wan phút nâa	Next Wednesday
Next week	phrŷhàt	wan phrŷhàt nâa	Next Thursday
	sùk	wan sùk nâa	Friday of Next week
	săw	wan săw nâa	Saturday of next week
	aathít	wan aathít nâa	Sunday of next week

22.4 EXERCISES

- a) Assume that you have just arrived in Thailand. Call up your friend, Mr. Prasert. He invites you to dinner at his house so that you can meet his wife.

(Use the approximate date of your arrival in Thailand as a basis for responses.)

- b) The instructor points at various dates on the calendar asks the students what the date is. (This should be continued until all students can give any date in the year readily).
- c) Student A asks Student B his birthdate. Student B responds with the correct information.
- d) Student A asks Student B how long he has been doing various things (below are some examples). Student A responds with the correct information.
1. living in the Washington area (or some other area)
 2. studying Thai
 3. married
 4. sitting here, etc.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- e) The students question each other about things they have wanted to do in the past and whether or not other people wanted them to do these things. Below is a sample exchange:

A: m̄ya s̄ip pii maa lésw phǒm jàak pen m̄ɔ

B: khun ph̄ɔ jàak h̄aj khun pen m̄ɔ r̄ypl̄aaw

A: m̄aj jàak khr̄ap . kh̄aw jàak h̄aj phǒm pen khruu

A: Ten years ago I wanted to be a doctor.

B: Did your father want you to be a doctor?

A: No, he didn't. He wanted me to be a teacher.

22.5 VOCABULARY

áafarikaa (thaw̄ip)	Africa (continent)
aathít	week
imphiir̄ian	Imperial (name of a hotel in Bangkok)
cam... d̄aj	to remember
ch̄uammon	hour (60 minutes)
deewít	David
dyan	month
hanl̄ɔ	Hello
jàak	to want to, would like to
-jon	ending of the months that have 30 days
kanjaa (jon)	September
kar̄akkadaa(khom)	July
-khom	ending of months that have 31 days
khr̄ítsàkàr̄aat (kh̄ɔ s̄ɔ)	Christian Era
kumphaa(phan)	February
l̄əəj	at all (after a negative); so, then, consequently

THAI BASIC COURSE

maa léew	ago
maryynníi	the day after tomorrow
meesǎa(jon)	April
miinaa(khom)	March
míthunaa(jon)	June
mókkaraa(khom)	January
phák	to stay at, to stop at (hotel, etc.)
-phan	ending for month of February
phrýt(sa)cikkaa(jon)	November
phrýtsaphaa(khom)	May
phútthá sàkàràat (phoosǎo)	Buddhist Era
rêem	to start
rópkuam	to bother, trouble (someone)
rə, rək, rək, ròk, rək, rə-	particle often used with statement of negation
rûam rýdii	Ruam Rudi, name of a lane off Sukhumwit Road
sǐnhǎa(khom)	August
sǔnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
sùttháaj	last
thíi léew	ago
tântèe	from (such and such a time or starting point), since
thanwaa(khom)	December
thíi léew	last
thùuk	to be right, correct
tòkloŋ	right, O.K., to agree (to something)
tulaa(khom)	October
waansyyn(níi)	the day before yesterday
wanthíi	date

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

23.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation About Length of Residence

- A: khun jùu myan thaj maa dâj kii pii lésw
How long have you been living in Thailand?
- B: sǒon pii kwàa lésw khráp
More than two years.
- A: lésw phyan khun la khráp maa jùu naan lésw rǎe
And your friend? Has he been here long?
- B: khaw phên maa khráp
He just came.
- A: khaw ca jùu kii pii khráp
How many years will he be (here)?
- B: jàan nǒoj sǒoj pii, jàan mâak sǐi pii
At least two years. At most four years.
- A: thammaj khaw thýn phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chat janjan lakhráp
How is it that he speaks Thai so clearly?
- B: phró khaw khǎej rian maa kòon khráp
He studied it previously.
- A: thîinǎj khráp
Where?
- B: thîi ameerikaa
In America.
- A: khaw rian jùu naan thâwràj khráp
How long did he study?
- B: sǐp dyan khráp
Ten months.

THAI BASIC COURSE

23.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) After constructions giving numerical amounts kwàa is translated as 'more than'. For example,

sǒŋ pii kwàa 'More than 2 years'
sìp lít kwàa 'More than 10 liters'

When used with bàat 'baht' (Thai currency), the position of kwàa is important, thus

sìp bàat kwàa means 'more than ten baht but less than eleven',
but sìp kwàa bàat means 'more than ten but less than twenty'.

- b) phên 'just' occurs just before the main verb in the sentence and refers to the recent past.

kháw phên maa 'He just came.'

- c) phûut thoorasàp means 'to talk on the telephone.'

23.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The verbs jùu, and maa may be used in conjunction with dâj and lěw to indicate whether (1) an activity is complete or incomplete, and (2) whether it lasted for a long or short period of time. When verbs are used in this manner, they may be called Aspect Particles.

1. When jùu is used as an aspect particle, it indicates that the activity referred to continued for a particular period of time. jùu does not itself indicate the time of an action but may be used in combination with time expressions as in the following example.

kháw ca rian nánŝy jùu sǒŋ pii
'He'll be studying for 2 years (no more or less)!'.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. When maa... l'ésw occur together as aspect markers there is indication that the action originated in the past and is continuing into the present.

kháw thamnaan maa 2 pii l'ésw

'He has been working for 2 years (and still is)'.

3. dâj + Time Expression refers only to the passage of a specific period of time; when it is followed by l'ésw, there is indication that the period of time referred to continues into the present, when used without time or aspect particles, it is interpreted as 'indefinite past time'.

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii

'He worked for 2 years.'

kháw thamnaan dâj 2 pii l'ésw

'He's been working for 2 years (and still is working)'.

In the chart below the use and meaning of jùu, dâj, maa, and l'ésw are illustrated:

MAIN SENTENCE	Aspect Particles and Time Expressions				Meaning
kháw thamnaan	jùu		2 pii		Past Time; Specific Period of Time ¹
kháw thamnaan	jùu	dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii		
kháw thamnaan	jùu	...	.....		Present Progressive ²
kháw <u>kamlaŋ</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	.....
kháw thamnaan	{ jùu maa		2 pii	l'ésw	Present Perfect ³
kháw thamnaan	{ jùu maa	dâj	2 pii	l'ésw ⁴	
kháw thamnaan		dâj	2 pii	l'ésw	
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	...	...	2 pii		Future ⁵
kháw <u>ca</u> thamnaan	jùu	...	2 pii		Future, Specific period of time

THAI BASIC COURSE

1. He worked (for) two years.
2. He is working.
3. He has been working...
4. He has been working... (focus on starting point)
5. He will be working two years.

Special note: If either maa or jùu occurs in the main sentence, it can not occur as a particle,

thus kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj dâj 2 pii lésw

(Two years have passed since he came to live in Thailand).

'He's been living in Thailand for 2 years.'

Neither maa dâj 2 pii lésw nor jùu dâj 2 pii lésw can occur after kháw maa jùu myaŋ thaj.

- b) thammaj 'why' may occur at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. Its position is determined by the expected answer, thus

1. thammaj is at the end of the sentence if the response is a Verb Phrase indicating purpose, thus

Q: paj thammaj 'Why are you going?'
(What is the purpose?)

A: paj sýy khǒŋ 'To shop.'

2. thammaj is at the beginning of the sentence if the response expected normally begins with phró 'because', and provides an explanation as to why certain actions took place or why certain situations exist, thus

Q: thammaj paj sýy thîinân 'Why did you buy there?'
thammaj mâj sýy thîinîi 'Why not shop here?'

A: phró thîinân (khǒŋ) 'Because things are
thùuk kwàa cheaper there.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. thammaj always occurs at the beginning of negative questions.
4. thýn may occur with thammaj. It serves as an intensifier of the question. Observe the following example:

thammaj khun mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'Why don't you like living in Washington?'

thammaj khun thýn mâj jàak jùu wòochintân

'How is that you don't like living in Washington?'

22.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun jùu myan thaj maa (dâj)</p> <p>{ kii pii lésu</p> <p>{ naan thâwràj</p> <p>How long have you been living in Thailand?</p>	<p>phôm jùu myan thaj maa (dâj)</p> <p>sòon pii lésu</p> <p>Two years.</p>
<p>2. khun thamnaan thîinfi maa</p> <p>(dâj) { kii pii lésu</p> <p> { naan thâwràj</p> <p>How long have you been working here?</p>	<p>phôm thamnaan thîinfi maa</p> <p>(dâj) lăaj pii lésu</p> <p>Several years.</p>
<p>3. khun rian phaasăa thaj maa</p> <p>(dâj) kii dyan lésu</p> <p>How many months have you been studying Thai?</p>	<p>phôm rian phaasăa thaj maa</p> <p>(dâj) hăa dyan lésu</p> <p>Five months.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun pen khruu maa (dâj) phǒm pen khruu maa (dâj)
kîi pii lésw (nỳn) pii kwàa lésw
How many years have More than a year.
you been a teacher?
5. khun rúucàk kháw maa phǒm rúucàk kháw maa
(dâj) naan thâwràj lésw (dâj) sǎam pii lésw
How long have you Three years.
been knowing him?
6. khun tènṇaan maa (dâj) phǒm tènṇaan maa (dâj)
kîi pii lésw kỳap pii lésw
How many years have Almost a year.
you been married?

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|--|--|
| 1. khun maa jùu thĭinĭi dâj
naan thâwràj lésw khráp
How long ago was it that you
you came to live here? | phǒm maa jùu thĭinĭi dâj
hòk dyan lésw khráp
Six months (ago). |
| 2. khun maa thamṇaan thĭinĭi
dâj naan thâwràj lésw khráp
How long ago was it that
you came to work here? | phǒm maa thamṇaan thĭinĭi
dâj nỳn pii lésw khráp
One year (ago). |
| 3. khun maa rian nánsýy thĭinĭi
dâj kîi dyan lésw
How many months ago was it
that you came to study here? | phǒm maa rian nánsýy thĭinĭi
dâj sǒṇ dyan lésw
Two months (ago). |

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun maa pen khruu thīnīi phǒm maa pen khruu thīnīi
dâj kīi pii léew dâj k̄yap n̄ȳn pii léew khráp
- How many years ago was it
that you came to be a
teacher here? Almost a year (ago).

c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. lǎaj pii	khun tham râatchakaan maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been a government employee?	phǒm tham râatchakaan maa dâj lǎaj pii léew Several years.
2. sǎam dyan	khun maa rian phaasǎa thaj thīi ef-és-aj dâj kīi dyan léew How many months have you been studying Thai at FSI?	phǒm maa rian phaasǎa thaj thīi éf-és-aj dâj sǎam dyan léew Three months.
3. aathít kwàa	khun rian phaasǎa thâj maa dâj kīi aathít lèew How many weeks have you been studying Thai?	phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj maa dâj aathít kwàa léew More than a week.
4. sǒŋ pii	khun rúucàk kháw maa dâj naan thâwràj léew How long have you been knowing him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw maa dâj sǒŋ pii kwàa léew More than two years.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. hâa dyan khun klàp maa ameerikaa phǒm klàp maa ameerikaa
dâj dîi dyan lésw dâj hâa dyan lésw
How many months has
it been since you
came back to America? Five months.
6. sǎam khun nân khooj kháw maa phǒm nân khooj kháw maa
chûamoon dâj kîi chûamoon lésw dâj sǎam chûamoon lésw
How many hours have
you been sitting
waiting for him? Three hours.
7. khrÿn raw khuj kan maa dâj kîi raw khuj kan maa dâj
chûamoon naathii lésw khrÿn chûamoon lésw
How many minutes have
you been conversing? A half hour.

d) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. khun rúucàk kháw maa naan
lésw
You've been knowing him
for a long time.
2. khun thamnaan thîinîi maa
naan lésw
You've been working here
for a long time.

Pattern 2

- khun rúucàk kháw maa naan
lésw rǎkhráp
Have you been knowing
him for long?
- khun thamnaan thîinîi maa
naan lésw rǎkhráp
Have you been working
here long?

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa
naan léew
You've been studying
Thai for a long time. | khun rian phaasǎa thaj maa
naan léew rǎkhráp
Have you been studying
Thai for long? |
| 4. khun jùu thîinîi maa naan
léew
You've been living here
for a long time. | khun jùu thîinîi maa naan
léew rǎkhráp
Have you been living
here long? |
| 5. khun sâap ryânnîi maa naan
léew
You've been knowing
about this matter
for a long time. | khun sâap ryânnîi maa naan
léew rǎkhráp
Have you been knowing
about this matter for
long? |
| 6. khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan
léew
You've been wanting to
see him for a long time. | khun jàak hěn kháw maa naan
léew rǎkhráp
Have you been wanting
to see him for long? |
| 7. khun chôp kháw maa naan
léew
You've liked her for a
long time. | khun chôp kháw maa naan
léew rǎkhráp
Have you liked her long? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill

	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1.	khun maa jùu myanṭhaj dâj naan léew rěkhráp Have you been living in Thailand long?	phêṅ maa khráp I just came.
2.	khun maa khooj phǒm dâj naan léew rěkhráp Have you been waiting for me long?	phêṅ maa khráp I just came.
3.	khun maa rian phaasăa thaj dâj naan léew rěkhráp Have you been studying Thai for long?	phêṅ maa khráp I just started.
4.	khun rúucàk kháw maa naan léew rěkhráp Have you been knowing him for long?	phêṅ rúucàk khráp I just met him.
5.	khun rian nánŝy lêmńí maa naan léew rěkhráp Have you been reading this book long?	phêṅ rian khráp I just began.

f) Expansion Drill

thammaj

thammaj lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ chát lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ phûut dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj thýṅ phûut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasăa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw phêṅ maa myaṅ thaj . thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj chát jaṅṅán lakhráp
He just came to Thailand. How is that he can speak Thai so clearly?
2. kháw mâj chōp aakaat rōon . thammaj kháw thýṅ jàak paj jùu myaṅ thaj lakhráp
He doesn't like hot weather. How is that he wants to go to Thailand?
3. kháw mâj khœj maa rian thîi ameerikaa . thammaj kháw thýṅ phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít dâj dii lakhráp
He has never studied in America. How is that he speaks English (so) well?
4. kháw bòok wâa kháw mâj mi nœn . thammaj kháw thýṅ sýy rót lakhráp
He said he didn't have any money. How is it that he speaks buying a car?

h) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|--------------|---|
| | thammaj (khun) (thýṅ) mâj <u>paj thamṅaan</u>
Why is it that you aren't going to work? |
| 1. phûut | thammaj khun thýṅ mâj <u>phûut</u>
Why is it that you don't talk? |
| 2. chōp kháw | thammaj khun thýṅ mâj <u>chōp kháw</u>
Why is that you don't like him? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. māj jāak jùu thammaj khun thýn māj jāak jùu wóochintân
 wóochintân Why is it that you don't like to live
 in Washington?
4. māj maa rian thammaj khun thýn māj maa rian nánsýy
 nánsýy How is it that you aren't studying?
5. māj khâwcaj thammaj khun thýn māj khâwcaj
 How does it happen that you don't understand?
6. māj khàp rôt thammaj khun thýn māj khàp rôt maa roonrian
 maa roonrian Why is it that you don't drive to school?

1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. rian maa kòon	thammaj kháw thýn phûut thaj dâj chát How does it come about that he speaks Thai so well?	(phró) kháw khæej rian maa kòon Because he studied previously.
2. māj chôp aakàat năaw	thammaj khun thýn māj jàak paj noorawee How is that you don't want to go to Norway?	(phró) phôm māj chôp aakàat năaw Because I don't like cold weather.
3. māj sabaaj	thammaj mýawaanníi kháw thýn māj maa thamnaan Why was it that he didn't come to work yesterday?	(phró) kháw māj sabaaj Because he was ill.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|--|---|---|
| 4. | khàp rót
mâj pen | thammaj phanrajaa khun
thýn mâj khàp rót
Why isn't your wife
driving? | (phró) kháw khàp rót
mâj pen
Because she doesn't
know how. |
| 5. | thaaŋ
ráatchakaan
jàak hâj phǒm
rúu phaasǎa
thaj | thammaj khun thýn tǒn
maa rian phaasǎa thaj
Why did you have to
come to study Thai? | (phró) thaaŋ ráatcha-
kaan jàak hâj phǒm
rúu phaasǎa thaj
Because the Govern-
ment wanted me to
know Thai. |
| 6. | mâj wâaŋ | thammaj khun thýn mâj
aw rót paj kĕe
Why didn't you take
your car to get it
repaired? | (phró) phǒm mâj wâaŋ
Because I wasn't
free. |

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | kháw rian phaasǎa thaj jùu kĭi
pii
How many years did he study
Thai? | kháw rian jùu nỳn pii
He studied one year. |
| 2. | khun pen thahǎan jùu kĭi pii
How many years were you
a soldier? | phǒm pen thahǎan jùu sǒŋ pii
I was a soldier for two
years. |
| 3. | khun faŋ théep jùu kĭi chûamoon
How many hours did you listen
to the tape? | phǒm faŋ théep jùu khrỳn
chûamoon
I listened to the tape
for half an hour. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

<p>4. khun phûut thoorasàp jùu naan thâwràj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How long did he talk on the telephone?</p>	<p>kháw phûut thoorasàp jùu jîisíp hâa naathii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He talked 25 minutes on the phone.</p>
---	--

<p>5. kháw thamṇaan jùu thîi wianṇan kii pii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many years did he work in Vientiane?</p>	<p>kháw thamṇaan jùu thîinân sǒṇ pii khryṇ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked there two and a half years.</p>
--	---

23.4 COMPREHENSION EXERCISES (Listen to the passages and answer the questions.)

a) m̂ya pii 1941 - tĥyṇ 1943 khun thoóm pen thahǎan jùu thîi ookinaawaa . kháw pen jùu sǒṇ pii, d̂lawníi khun thoóm pen khâarâatchakaan krasuanṇ t̂aan prathêet

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun thoóm khœej pen thahǎan máj	khœej
2. thîi nǎj	thîi ookinaawaa
3. pen jùu kii pii	sǒṇ pii
4. t̂ant̂èe pii khoosǒ araṇ tĥyṇ khoosǒ araṇ	1941 - 1943
5. d̂lawníi kháw thamṇaan araṇ	kháw pen khâarâatchakaan krasuanṇ t̂aanprathêet

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) myâcháawníi khun prichaa paj talàat . kháw phóp phýan thîi talàat . kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǎw chûamoon

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. myâcháawníi khun prichaa phóp khraj	kháw phóp phýan
2. thîinǎj	thîi talàat
3. kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu naan thâwràj	kháw khuj kàp phýan jùu sǎw chûamoon

- c) místə samít thamnaan thîi krasuanṭaan prathêet maa dâj lǎaj pii lésw . kháw khəej paj jùu lǎaj prathêet . kháw khəej paj pen kɔnsǔn thîi chianmàj jùu sǎam pii . weelaaníi , kháw jùu thîi woohintân

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. místə samít thamnaan thîi krasuan ṭaanprathêet maa dâj kǐi pii lésw	lǎaj pii lésw
2. kháw khəej paj jùu ṭaan prathêet máj	khəej kháw khəej paj jùu lǎaj prathêet
3. kháw khəej paj jùu myanṭhaj máj	khəej , kháw khəej paj pen kɔnsún thîi chianmàj
4. kháw pen kɔnsún jùu thîi chianmàj kǐi pii	kháw pen jùu sǎam pii

THAI BASIC COURSE

23.5 EXERCISES

- a) Different students will find out how long other students have been doing different kinds of activities. The following are some examples: (1) living here, (2) learning Thai, (3) married, (4) playing some sport, (5) knowing how to do something, such as driving a car, etc.
- b) One student will give a short biography of himself. Other students will question him about certain parts of it, in particular how long some parts of it lasted (egs. how long he was in the armed forces, etc.).
- c) One student says he went some particular place. A second student asks him why he went there. When the first student gives a reason, the second one asks him why he didn't go some other place. The first student gives his reasons.

23.6 VOCABULARY

ookinaawaa	Okinawa
chát	plain(ly), clear(ly), distinct(ly)
jàaη mâak	at most
jàaη nóoj	at least
lít	liter
maa kòn	previously
noorawee	Norway
phêη	just
thýη	that, so, then, if it comes to the point that

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

24.0 BASIC EPISODE: Part I

khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa khǎon krasuan tǎanprathêet . khǎw rian maa dǎj sǎon dyan léew . khǎw ca rian ìik sǎi dyan , léew ca paj myanthatj . khǎw ca paj jùu myanthatj jǎanǎoj raaw sǎon pii, jǎanmǎak sǎi pii . khǎw ca phaa phanrajaa lé lúuklúuk khǎon khǎw paj dǎaj . khǎw kà wǎa khǎw ca òok càak woochintǎn wanthǎi sǎp karákadaakhom, ca khǎp rót paj bǎan phǎomêe khǎw thǎi rát pensilweenia . khǎw ca phák jùu thǎinǎn hǎa wan, léew khǎw ca khǎp rót paj njujǎok . khǎw ca lon rya thǎi njujǎok lé paj khǎn thǎi farǎnsèet . càak farǎnsèet, khǎw ca bin paj room, eethén, teecharaan, niw delhii lé krunthêep. khǎw ca mǎj wé thǎaw teecharaan lé niw delhii tè khǎw ca wé thǎaw room sǎi wan lé eethén hǎa wan . khǎw kà wǎa khǎw ca thǎy krunthêep raawraaw wanthǎi nǎy sǎnhǎa.

24.1 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun thoomás kamlan rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thǎinǎj
2. khǎw rian maa dǎj naan thǎwràj léew
3. khǎw ca rian paj ìik kǎi dyan
4. léew khǎw ca paj nǎj
5. khǎw ca paj jùu myanthatj kǎi pii
6. khǎw ca phaa khraj paj dǎaj

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. kháw kà ca òok càak wòochingtân mýaràj
8. kháw ca paj nǎj kòon . paj janṇaj
9. thammaj kháw tōṇ paj thīi niw jók
10. kháw ca paj khýn rya thīinǎj
11. càak faràṅsèet , kháw ca paj myaṇ thaj dooj araj
12. kháw ca wé thīaw thīinǎj bān
13. kháw kà ca thýṇ myaṇ thaj mýaràj

24.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sǒṇ dyan, myaṇ thaj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǒṇ dyan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myaṇ thaj</u> He'll study for two more months, then go to Thailand.
2. sǐp wan, myan juan	kháw ca rian ìik <u>sǐp wan</u> , lésw ca paj <u>myaṇ juan</u> He'll study for ten more days, then go to Viet Nam.
3. hòk aathít chianmàj	kháw ca rian ìik <u>hòk aathít</u> , lésw ca paj <u>chianmàj</u> He'll study for six more weeks, then go to Chiangmai.
4. nýṇ pii, phamâa	kháw ca rian ìik <u>nýṇ pii</u> , lésw ca paj <u>phamâa</u> He'll study for one more year, then go to Burma.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. sǒŋ sàpdaa kháw ca rian ìik sǒŋ sàpdaa, lésw ca paj laaw
He'll study for two more weeks, then
go to Laos.
6. nỳn pii, sawít kháw ca rian ìik nỳn pii, lésw ca paj sawít
He'll study for one more year, then
go to Switzerland.

b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 3 aathít	khun ca rian ìik kii aathít How many more weeks will you study?	ìik sǎam aathít Three more weeks.
2. 4 pii	khun ca thamjaan ìik kii pii How many more years will you work?	ìik sii pii Four more years.
3. 10 pii	khun ca pen khâarâatchakaan ìik kii pii How many more years will you be a civil servant?	ìik síp pii Ten more years.
4. 15 naathii	khun ca jyyn khooj kháw ìik kii naathii How many more minutes will you wait for him?	ìik siphâa naathii Fifteen more minutes.
5. 3 wan	khun ca thfaw ìik kii wan How many more days will you be on vacation?	ìik sǎam wan Three more days.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. 2 pii khun ca pracam thîi myaŋ thaj ðik sŏŋ pii
 ðik kîi pii
 How many more years
 will you be stationed
 in Thailand? Two more years.

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. nỳŋ pii, 2 pii	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>nỳŋ pii</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>sŏŋ pii</u>
2. 20 naathii, 30 naathii	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>jîisìp naathii</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>săamsìp naathii</u>
3. sŏŋ dyan, sîi dyan	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>sŏŋ dyan</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>sîi dyan</u>
4. nỳŋ wan, cèt wan	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>nỳŋ wan</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>cèt wan</u>
5. sŏŋ aathít, săam aathít	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>sŏŋ aathít</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>săam aathít</u>
6. 2 chûamoon, 3 chûamoon	jàaŋ nŏŋj <u>sŏŋ chûamoon</u> , jàaŋ mâak <u>săam chûamoon</u>

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. wan thîi sîp karákadaa	kháw ca òok càak wŏochiŋtân wanthîi thâwràj On what date will he leave Washington?	kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca òok càak wŏochiŋtân wan thîi sîp karákadaa He estimates he will leave on July 10.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | | |
|----|---|---|----------------------------------|--|
| 2. | raaw dyan nâa phyân khun ca maa
thÿn mÿaràj | kháw kà (wâa kháw) ca
maa thÿn raaw dyan nâa | When will your
friend come? | He estimates he will
arrive next month. |
| 3. | wancan nâa khun ca paj aw rôt
mÿaràj | phôm kàa (wâa phôm) ca
paj aw wancan nâa | When will you go
get the car? | I plan to go get the
car next Monday. |
| 4. | raaw ìik sǎam khun ca bòok kháw
sìi wan mÿaràj | phôm kà (wâa phôm) ca
bòok kháw raaw ìik sǎam
sìi wan | When will you
tell him? | I plan to tell him in
three or four days. |

e) Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2 into 3.)

Sentences 1 and 2

Sentence 3

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | kháw ca kháp rôt
kháw ca paj njujóok | kháw ca kháp rôt paj njujóok
He'll drive to New York. |
| 2. | kháw ca dæen...
kháw ca paj roonrian | kháw ca dæen paj roonrian
He'll walk to school. |
| 3. | kháw ca lon rya
kháw ca paj loondoön | kháw ca lon rya paj loondoön
He'll take a boat to London. |
| 4. | kháw ca khÿn rôtmee
kháw ca paj ajúthajaa | kháw ca khÿn rôtmee paj ajúthajaa
He'll go to Ayuthaya by bus. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. kháw ca nân ryabin kháw ca nân ryabin paj myaŋ thaj
 kháw ca paj myaŋ thaj He'll take a plane to Thailand.
6. kháw ca khÿn rótfaj kháw ca khÿn rótfaj paj chiaŋmàj
 kháw ca paj chiaŋmàj He'll take a train to Chiangmai.

f) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. rooŋrɛɛm eerawan, hâa
wan | kháw ca phákw jùu thîi <u>rooŋrɛɛm</u>
<u>eerawan hâa wan</u>
He'll stay at the Erawan Hotel
for five days. |
| 2. bâan phÿan, sǒŋ aathít | kháw ca phákw jùu thîi <u>bâan phÿan</u>
<u>sǒŋ aathít</u>
He'll stay at his friend's
house for two weeks. |
| 3. chaaj thalee, nÿŋ dyan | kháw ca phákw jùu thîi <u>chaaj thalee</u>
<u>nÿŋ dyan</u>
He'll stay at the beach
for a month. |
| 4. parîit, 4 chûamooŋ | kháw ca phákw jùu thîi <u>parîit sîi</u>
<u>chûamooŋ</u>
He'll stay in Paris for four
hours. |
| 5. bâan phǒm, nÿŋ pii | kháw ca phákw jùu thîi <u>bâan phǒm</u>
<u>nÿŋ pii</u>
He'll stay at my house for
one year. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. thîinîi, sǎam naathii khâw ca pháak jùu thîinîi sǎam naathii
He'll stay here three minutes.

g) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mâj wé	khun ca wé thîaw thîi room rýplàaw Are you going to stop in Rome?	plàaw khráp No.
2. wé	khun ca mâj wé thîaw thîi teecharan rýkhráp Aren't you going to stop in Teheran?	wé khráp Yes, I am.
3. mâj wé	khun ca wé thîi bâan phǒm rýplàaw Are you going to stop at my house?	plàaw khráp No.
4. wé	khun ca mâj wé thîi hôṅkoṅ rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hong Kong?	wé khráp Yes, I am.
5. mâj wé	khun ca wé thîaw thîi jîipùn rýplàaw Are you stopping in Japan?	plàaw khráp No.
6. wé	khun ca mâj wé thîi haawaaj rýkhráp Aren't you stopping at Hawaii?	wé khráp Yes, I am.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. rya, njujóok, farànsèet	kháw ca loŋ <u>rya</u> thîi <u>njujóok</u> paj khÿn thîi <u>farànsèet</u> He'll get on a boat in New York and get off in France.
2. khrÿanbin, woochintân, krunthêep	kháw ca khÿn <u>khrÿanbin</u> thîi <u>woochintân</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>krunthêep</u> He'll get on a plane in Washington and get off in Bangkok.
3. rótfaj, ajúthajaa, chianmàj	kháw ca khÿn <u>rótfaj</u> thîi <u>ajúthajaa</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>chianmàj</u> He'll get on the train in Ayuthaya and get off in Chiangmai.
4. ryabaj, pàaknám, baanpuu	kháw ca loŋ <u>ryabaj</u> thîi <u>pàaknám</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>baanpuu</u> He'll get on a sail boat at Paknam and get off at Bangpu.
5. thésksîi, hǎalamphoon, prajsanii klaan	kháw ca khÿn <u>thésksîi</u> thîi <u>hǎalamphoon</u> lé loŋ thîi <u>prajsanii</u> <u>klaan</u> He'll get in a taxi at Hualampong (Station) and get off at the Main Post Office.
6. ryacâan, thâapracan, sirirâat	kháw ca loŋ <u>ryacâan</u> thîi <u>thâapracan</u> lé khÿn thîi <u>sirirâat</u> He'll get on a rented boat at Pracan landing and get off at Siriraj.

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Sentence Combination Drill

Sentence 1 and 2

1. kháw cam dâj
kháw mií phÿan khon thaj
khon nyŋ

2. kháw cam dâj
khun pháak jùu thîinǎj

3. kháw cam dâj
khun phûut wâa araj

4. kháw cam dâj
khun khœj paj myan̄thaj

5. kháw cam dâj
kháw phóp khun thîi
loondoon

6. kháw cam dâj
khun pen khâarâatchakaan
kràsuan̄ tàan̄ prathêet

Sentence 3

- kháw cam dâj wâa (kháw) mií phÿan
khon thaj khon nyŋ
He remembered he had a Thai
friend.

- kháw cam dâj wâa khun pháak jùu
thîinǎj
He remembered where you were
staying.

- kháw cam dâj wâa khun phûut wâa araj
He remembered what you said.

- kháw cam dâj wâa khun khœj paj
myan̄thaj
He remembered that you had
been in Thailand.

- kháw cam dâj wâa kháw phóp khun
thîi loondoon
He remembered he met you
in London.

- kháw cam dâj wâa khun pen
khâarâatchakaan kràsuan̄ tàan̄
prathêet
He remembered that you
were a State Department
civil servant.

24.3 BASIC EPISODE: Part II

khun thoomás maa thǎyŋ krunthēep mǎa wan thǎi sǎoŋ
sǎnhǎakhom . khǎw phák jùu thǎi roonreem imphiirǎan
tron sǎoŋ rǔam rýdii . phanrajae lé lúuklúuk khǎoŋ
khǎw chǎop roonreem níi máak phró jùu kláŋ sathǎanthúut ,
ráanaahǎan lé ráan khǎajkhǎoŋ . thǎi roonreem mi
sà wǎajnáam. khǎw wǎaj náam kan thúkwan

khun thoomás maa jùu myaŋ thaj dǎj sǎam wan . khǎw
cam dǎj wǎa khǎw mi phyǎn khon thaj khon nyŋ . phyǎn
khonníi khǎeŋ rian jùu kàp khǎw thǎi mahǎawítthajalaj
jeel mǎa sǐp pii thǎi léew . khǎw khǎeŋ rian jùu chán
diaw kàp phyǎn khonníi lǎaj pii . khǎw chǎop kan máak
tè khun thoomás máj sǎap wǎa phyǎn khǎw jùu thǎi nǎj .
khǎw cam dǎj wǎa phyǎn khonníi chǎy khun sǔnthoŋ
naamsakun mahǎasàk . wannyŋ khǎw pèet sǎmut thoorasàp .
khǎw phóp chǎy khun sǔnthoŋ . khǎw thoo paj hǎa khun
sǔnthoŋ thǎi bǎan . khun sǔnthoŋ diicaj máak . khǎw
cheen khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua paj thaan khǎaw thǎi
bǎan . khǎw maa ráp khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua thǎi
hooten lé phaa paj bǎan khǎw . bǎan khun sǔnthoŋ sǎaj
máak . khun sǔnthoŋ jàak háj khun thoomás lé khrǎopkhrua
phák jùu kàp khǎw . khǎw chuan khun thoomas tè khun
thoomas máj jàak rópkuuan khun sǔnthoŋ.

THAI BASIC COURSE

24.4 QUESTIONS ON BASIC EPISODE: Part II

1. khun thoomás maa thýŋ krunthêep mýaràj
2. kháw pháak jùu thfinǎj
3. khrôpkhrua khôŋ khun thoomás chôp roongsem thfi kháw pháak jùu máj . phró araj
4. khun thoomás khœej mií phýan thaj máj
5. kháw rúucàk kan dâj janŋaj
6. khun thoomás sâap máj wâa phýan khôŋ kháw jùu thfinǎj
7. kháw cam chýy lé naamsakun khôŋ phýan kháw dâj máj
8. kháw phóp khun sŭnthoon dâj janŋaj
9. khun sŭnthoon diicaj máj
10. kháw cheen khun thoomás lé khrôpkhrua paj bâan rýplàaw
11. khun thoomás paj bâan khun sŭnthoon janŋaj
12. khun sŭnthoon jáak háj khun thoomás lé khrôpkhrua pháak jùu kàp kháw máj
13. kháw tham janŋaj
14. thammaj khun thoomás thýŋ mâj pháak bâan khun sŭnthoon

24.5 EXERCISES

One student will describe a travel experience he has had using the basic episode as a model. Other students will ask questions about it.

THAI BASIC COURSE

24.6 VOCABULARY

eethén	Athens
baanpuu	Bangpu (name of a tambon)
chaaj	edge, rim, border
chaajthalee	the beach
diicaj	to be glad
haawaaj	Hawaii
hônkon	Hong Kong
jeel	Yale (University)
kà	to guess, estimate
mahǎasàk	Mahasak (last name)
niw delhi	New Delhi
pàaknáam	Pakram (name of an Amphoe)
pensilweenia	Pennsylvania
pracam	to be stationed
rópkuun	to trouble, bother
ryabaj	sail boat
ryacâan	rented boat
sàpdaa / sàppadaa	week (elegant usage)
sà wâajnáam	swimming pool
sawít	Switzerland
sirirâat	Siriraj, name of the hospital in Thonburi
sũnthoon	Sunthorn (male first name)
teeharaan	Teheran
thalee	sea
thoomás	Thomas
wé	to stop in, over

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

25.0 BASIC DIALOG: Making an Acquaintance

- A: pen araj paj khráp
mâj sabaaj rě
What's the matter with you? Aren't you well?
- B: plàaw khráp, mâj dâj pen araj
nuân noon
mâyakhyynníi paj naanlían
lœej noon dýk paj nõoj
Nothing's the matter. I'm sleepy.
Last night I went to a party so I got to bed a little late.
- A: sanúk máj khráp
Was it fun? (Did you have a good time?)
- B: sanúk mâak
Yes, it was. (I certainly did.)
- A: phóp khraj bâan
Who did you meet there? (Who was there?)
- B: lăaj khon khráp
phôm dâj phýan màj lăaj khon
ôo, phôm phóp khonthaj khon
nyŋ
kháw bòok wâa pen phyân kàw
khun
A lot of people.
I made a lot of new friends.
Oh, I ran into a Thai.
He said he was an old friend of yours.
- A: kháw chýy araj
What was his name?
- B: phôm cam mâj dâj
kháw hâj naambàt phôm
tè phôm lyym aw maa
I can't remember.
He gave me his card, but I forgot to bring it.

THAI BASIC COURSE

25.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) pen araj (paj) 'What's the matter (with you)?' is the normal way to inquire about what pain or ailment someone has.

1. If one has some kind of disease, he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen wàt 'I have a cold.'

phǒm pen khâj 'I have a fever.'

phǒm pen khâjwàt 'I have the flu.'

Or he may respond as follows:

phǒm pen rôok bít 'I have dysentery.'

phǒm pen rôok sâjtan 'I have appendicitis.'

phǒm pen rôok àhiwaa 'I have cholera.'

2. If one has an ache or pain, he will give its location:

phǒm pùat hǔa (Lit. I ache in the head.)
'I have a headache.'

phǒm pùat thóon (Lit. I ache in the area of the
intestines.)
'I have a stomach ache.'

b) sanùk means 'to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time, etc.' It may have a place, thing, person, or activity as subject.

c) dâj has the meaning 'get, obtain, procure' when used as the main verb, as in the sentence phǒm dâj phýan màj lăaj khon 'I made a lot of new friends.'

d) There are several ways to indicate 'lateness' in Thai. The choice is determined by the time of day referred to. Observe the following chart:

THAI BASIC COURSE

Time of Day	Early	Late
Morning	cháaw tèe cháaw	sǎaj
Late in the day	wan tèe wan	khâm
Evening	hǔakhâm tèe hǔakhâm	dỳk
Anytime	rew	cháa

e) When tèe (often ta) occurs before cháaw, wan, etc., it indicates that the speaker considers the earliness to be unexpected or unusual.

f) b̀ya means 'to be bored'; n̂ab̀ya means 'boring'.
Observe the following examples:

phǒm b̀ya (kháw, duu nánsǎy, etc.) 'I'm bored (with him, studying, etc.)'.

kháw tham háj phǒm b̀ya (He causes me to be bored.)
'He bores me.'

nǎn r̂yan̂n̂i n̂ab̀ya 'This movie is boring.'

g) saǹuk means 'to have fun, have a good time, enjoy oneself' or 'to be fun, entertaining'. Observe the following examples:

kháw saǹuk 'He's having a good time.'

tham̂naan tĥin̂n̂i m̂aj saǹuk 'Working here is not fun.'

kháw pen khon saǹuk 'He's a fun person.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

- h) læj 'so' is a word used to connect conditional sentences with result sentences, thus

kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jàak khuj kakháw

'He's a dull person so we don't want to talk with him.'

- i) hâj 'to give' is followed by the object and then by the recipient of the object.

kháw hâj nânsýy phôm 'He gave a book to me.'

25.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw maa thamnaan sǎaj thúkwan tɛɛ wanní kháw

maa { tɛɛ cháaw
 } ta

He comes to work late everyday, but today he came early.

2. kháw kláp bâan khâm thúkwan tɛɛ wanní kháw kláp

bâan { tɛɛ wan
 } ta

He goes home late everyday, but today he went home early.

3. kháw khâw noon dýk thúk khiyn tɛɛ khiynní kháw

noon { tɛɛ hǔakhâm
 } ta

She goes to bed late every night, but tonight she went to bed early.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. kháw maa cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanníí maa rew.

He always comes late, but today he came early.

5. khruu khon nán òok càak hǎn cháa samǎe tɛɛ wanníí
kháw òok càak hǎn rew.

That teacher always comes out of the room
late, but today she came out early.

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw khâw noon thǎn khyyn
He went to bed at midnight.

2. kháw thaán aahǎankhâm weelaa
hâa thûm
She ate dinner at 11 p.m.

3. kháw tỳyn noon tii hâa
He got up at 5 a.m.

4. kháw maa roonrián weelaa moon
cháaw khryñ
He come to school at 7:30 a.m.

5. kháw bòok wâa kháw ca klàp
maa wan thǎi sǐp tɛɛ kháw
klàp maa wan thǎi hâa
He said he'd return on the
tenth, but he returned on
the fifth.

Pattern 2

kháw khâw noon dỳk.
He went to bed late.

kháw thaán dỳk.
She ate late.

kháw tỳyn noon cháaw
He got up early.

kháw maa roonrián tɛɛ
cháaw
He came to school early.

kháw klàp maa rew.

He came back early.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>6. kháw khâw noon dỳk thúk khyyn
tèe khyynníi kháw khâw noon
weelaa sǒn thûm</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He goes to bed late every
night, but tonight he went
to bed at 8 p.m.</p> | <p style="text-align: right;">kháw khâw noon tèe hǔakhâm</p> <p style="text-align: right; padding-top: 100px;">He went to bed early.</p> |
|--|--|

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. kháw pen araj paj What's the matter with him?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">kháw mâj sabaaj He's ill.</p>
<p>2. khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">phǒm pùat , sǐisà { hǔa I have a headache.</p>
<p>3. khun cim pen araj What's the matter with Jim?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">kháw pen wát He has a cold.</p>
<p>4. phanrajaa khun pen araj paj What's the matter with your wife?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">kháw pen khâj She has a fever.</p>
<p>5. khun pen araj paj What's the matter with you?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">phǒm mâj dâj pen araj. Nothing.</p>
<p>6. khun pen araj(paj) What's the matter with you?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">phǒm pen khâjwát I have the flu.</p>
<p>7. kháw pen araj (paj) What's the matter with him?</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">kháw pen rôok bìt He has dysentery.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. lûukchaaĵ khun pen araj(paj) kháw pùat thóŋ
What's the matter with He has a belly ache.
your son?
9. khun phôo khun pen araj(paj) kháw mâĵ sabaaj mâak
What's the matter with kháw pen rôok àhiwaa
your father? He's very ill. He has
cholera.

d) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- ŋaanlían sanuk máĵ
Was the party fun?
1. náŋsyĵ náŋsyĵ sanùk máĵ
Is the book amusing?
2. năŋ năŋ sanùk máĵ
Was the movie fun?
3. krunthêep krunthêep sanùk máĵ
Is Bangkok fun?
4. rian phaasăa thaj rian phaasăa thaj sanùk máĵ
Is studying Thai fun?
5. jùu thîinĵi jùu thîinĵi sanùk máĵ
Is it enjoyable living here?
6. khuĵ kàp kháw khuĵ kàp kháw sanùk máĵ
Is talking to her fun?

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. very	ɲaan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
2. not at all	ɲaan sanùk máj Is the work amusing?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
3. very	náŋsŷy lêmnií sanùk máj Is this book amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
4. not at all	jùu thîinfi sanùk máj Is living here fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
5. very	rian phaasăa thaj sanùk máj Is studying Thai fun?	sanùk mâak It's a lot of fun.
6. not at all	khuj kàp kháw sanùk máj Is talking to her fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.
7. very	kháw phûut sanùk máj Is what he says amusing?	sanùk mâak Very amusing.
8. not at all	năŋ sanùk máj Was the movie fun?	mâj sanùk ləəj Not at all.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Lexical Drill

Pattern 1

1. ɲaan māj sanùk
The working isn't amusing.
2. thamɲaan thīnīi māj sanùk
Working here isn't enjoyable.
3. nǎŋ ryāɲnīi māj sanùk
This movie isn't amusing.
4. nǎŋsyǎ lēmniī māj sanùk
This book isn't amusing.
5. rian phaasǎa thaj māj sanùk
Studying Thai isn't fun.

Pattern 2

1. ɲaan nāab̀yà
The work's dull.
2. thamɲaan thīnīi nāab̀yà
Working here is boring.
3. nǎŋ ryāɲnīi nāab̀yà
This movie is dull.
4. nǎŋsyǎ lēmniī nāab̀yà
This book is boring.
5. rian phaasǎa thaj nāab̀yà
Studying Thai is boring.

g) Lexical Drill

Pattern 1

1. raw sanùk
We're having fun.
2. myākhyyn thúk khon sanúk
Last night everybody
had fun.
3. phyān phǒm sanùk
My friend is having a good time.
4. phǒm sanùk
I'm having fun.

Pattern 2

1. raw māj b̀yà
We are not (being) bored.
2. myākhyynnīi māj miī khraj b̀yà
Last night nobody found
it dull.
3. phyān phǒm māj b̀yà
My friend isn't bored.
4. phǒm māj b̀yà
I'm not being bored.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Lexical Drill

	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1.	raw mâj sanùk We're not enjoying ourselves.	raw b̀ya We are bored.
2.	mâj mii khraj sanùk Nobody's having fun.	thúk khon b̀ya Everybody is being bored.
3.	khun cœn mâj sanùk John is not enjoying himself.	khun cœn b̀ya John is finding it dull.
4.	phœm mâj sanùk I'm not having a good time.	phœm b̀ya I'm being bored.

1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	<u>kháw</u> pen khon sanùk He's an amusing person.
1. phyân khun khonnán	<u>phyân khun khonnán</u> pen khon sanùk That friend of yours is an amusing person.
2. khun praphâat	<u>khun praphâat</u> pen khon sanùk Mr. Prapas is an amusing person.
3. khun phœc phœm	<u>khun phœc phœm</u> pen khon sanùk My father is an amusing person.
4. khun	<u>khun</u> pen khon sanùk You are an amusing person.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. nákrían màj khonnán nákrían màj khonnán pen khon sanùk
That new student is an amusing
person.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. m̄ya khyynníi phǒm paj ñaanlían læj noon dýk paj nõj
Last night I went to a party, so I got to bed late.
2. kháw thíaw mâak (kháw) læj mâj sabaaj
He goes out a lot, so he's not well.
3. kháw riíp paj myan̄thaj (kháw) læj mâj mií weelaa
wé thíaw júróop
He was in such a hurry to get to Thailand, that
he didn't have time to stop off in Europe.
4. phǒm khít wâa khun sâap léew (phǒm) læj mâj dâj
bòok khun
I thought you already knew, so I didn't tell you.
5. phǒm riíp òok càak bâan (phǒm) læj lyym aw ñæen maa
I left home in such a hurry, that I forgot to
bring any money.
6. thǎswníi mâj mií thíicòotrót phǒm læj tǎon̄ maa rótmee
There's no place to park around here, so I had
to take the bus.
7. wanníi, phanrajaa phǒm tǎon̄ cháj rót phǒm læj tǎon̄
maa théksíi
Today my wife had to use the car, so I had to
come by taxi.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. kháw pen khon nâabyà raw læj mâj jaàk khuj kàp kháw
He's such a dull person that we don't want to
talk with him.
9. wanní phanrajaa ka lûukphǒm paj thǎaw kan phǒm læj
tǒn jùu bâan khon diaw
Today my wife and children went out, so I had
to stay home alone.
10. phûujǐn khonnán khít wâa khun tènnaan léew (kháw) læj
mâj jaak paj thǎaw kàp khun
That woman thought you were married, so she didn't
want to go out with you.
11. kháw phûut phaasǎa ankrít mâj dâj phǒm læj tǒn
phûut phaasaathaj kàp kháw
She doesn't speak English, so I must talk Thai to her.
12. phǒm wé bâan phyân læj klàp bâan cháa paj nǒj
I stopped at a friend's house, so I got home late.

k) Transformation Drill (Make a statement expressing what is
in the conversational exchange using
læj.)

Pattern 1 and 2

1. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun
thýn noon òyk paj
Why did you go to
bed so late?

sawàt: phró phǒm paj ñaanlián
Because I went to
a party.

Pattern 3

khun sawàt paj ñaanlián
kháw læj noon òyk paj nǒj
Somsak went to a party
so he went to bed late.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cǒon thýn
mâj sabaaj

Why isn't John well?

sawàt: phró kháw thaan mâak paj
nòoj

Because he ate
too much.

khun cǒon thaan mâak paj
nòoj kháw læej mâj sabaaj

John ate too much,
so he isn't well.

3. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun
mâj wé thĭaw júroòp

Why didn't you
stop in Europe?

sawàt: phró phǒm mâj mii weelaa

Because I didn't
have time.

khun sawàt mâj mii weelaa
kháw læej mâj dâj wé thĭaw
júroòp.

Sawat didn't have time,
so he didn't stop off
in Europe.

4. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cǒon maa
rótmee

Why did John come
by bus?

sawàt: phró kháw khàprót mâj pen

Because he can't drive.

khun cǒon khàprót mâj pen
læej tǒn maa rótmee.

John can't drive, so
he came by bus.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt, thammaj khun
thýn phûut phaasǎa ankrít
kàp kháw

Why do you speak
English with them?

sawàt: phró kháw phûut phaasǎa
thaj mâj pen

Because they can't
speak Thai.

kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj
mâj pen khun sawàt læj
tǒn phûut phaasǎa ankrít
ka kháw

They can't speak Thai,
so Sawat has to speak
English with them.

6. sǒmsàk: thammaj khun cim mâj
chǒp phûujǐn khonnán

Why doesn't Jim
like that woman?

sawàt: phró phûujǐn khonnán
mâj sǎaj

Because that woman
isn't pretty.

phûujǐn khonnán mâj sǎaj
khun cim læj mâj chǒp
kháw

That woman isn't pretty,
so Jim doesn't like her.

7. sǒmsàk: khun prichaa khráp,
thammaj khun thýn mâj
khâwcaj la khráp

Why didn't you
understand?

sawàt: phró phǒm mâj dâj fan

Because I didn't
listen.

khun prichaa mâj dâj fan
kháw læj mâj khâwcaj

Pricha didn't listen,
so he didn't understand.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. sǒmsàk: khun sawàt khráp,
mýakhyynní, thammaj
khun thýn ríip klàp
la khráp
Why were you in such
a hurry to leave last
night, Sawat?

sawàt: phró phǒm byà	mýakhyynní khun sawàt byà kháw <u>læej</u> ríip klàp
Because I was bored.	Last night Sawat was bored, so he left in a hurry.

1) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| | kháw háj <u>naambàt</u> phǒm
He gave me his card. |
| 1. nánsýy lêm níí | kháw háj <u>nánsýy lêm níí</u> phǒm
He gave me this book. |
| 2. nǎen | kháw háj nǎen phǒm
He gave me some money. |
| 3. klînthàajrûup | kháw háj <u>klînthàajrûup</u> phǒm
He gave me a camera. |
| 4. wítthajú | kháw háj <u>wítthajú</u> phǒm
He gave me a radio. |
| 5. bæe thoorasàp | kháw háj <u>bæe thoorasàp</u> phǒm
She gave me her telephone number. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. rûup kháw hâj rûup phǒm
 She gave me a picture.
7. pàakaa kháw hâj pàakaa phǒm
 They gave me a pen.
8. samùt kháw hâj samùt phǒm
 They gave me a notebook.

m) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- phǒm dâj phyân màj lăaj khon.
 I made many new friends.
1. nánsyǎ phǒm dâj nánsyǎ lăaj lêm
 I got many books.
2. nánsyǎ diidii phǒm dâj nánsyǎ diidii lăaj lêm
 I procured many good books.
3. ñeen (róoj) phǒm dâj ñeen lăaj róoj
 I earned many hundred (baht).
4. naalikaa phǒm dâj naalikaa láaj ryan
 I obtained several watches.
5. rûup phǒm dâj rûup lăaj baj
 I got many pictures.
6. raanwan (jàan) phǒm dâj raanwan lăaj jàan
 I earned many prizes.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. lûuknóon kèn kèn phǒm dâj lûuknóon kèn kèn lǎaj khon.
I procured several skilled subordinates.

n) Response Drill (Give negative answers to the questions.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. pen araj (paj) What's the matter with you?	mâj dâj pen araj Nothing.
2. kamlan tham araj What are you doing?	mâj dâj tham araj Nothing.
3. phûut araj What did you say?	mâj dâj phûut araj Nothing.
4. paj nǎj Where are you going?	mâj dâj paj nǎj Nowhere.
5. rúucàk khraj Who do you know?	mâj rúucàk khraj I don't know anybody.
6. jàak phóp khraj Who do you want to meet?	mâj jàak phóp khraj Nobody.
7. khít araj What are you thinking about?	mâj dâj khít araj Nothing.
8. sýy araj What did you buy?	mâj dâj sýy araj Nothing.
9. mií khraj hěn bân Did anybody see anything?	mâj mií khraj hěn Nobody saw anything.

THAI BASIC COURSE

25.3 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what is the matter with him. The second responds with some type of ailment.
- b) One student asks another whether he considers certain people, places, things, or activities to be amusing or fun. The second responds according to his opinion. The questions may be specific (the person you met at the party last night, etc.) or they may be general (learning Thai, etc.)
- c) Student A will ask Student B why he did or didn't do something (ex: Why did you go to bed late last night?). Student B will give a reason (ex: Because I went to a party). Student C will pretend he didn't understand and will ask Student A what was said (ex: Excuse me, I didn't understand. What did he say?). Student A will tell him. Use the following examples as a model:

Student A: m̄yakhynn̄fī, thammaj khun th̄ȳn̄ noon d̄ȳk paj

Student B: phr̄ó phóm paj ñaanl̄ían̄

Student C: kh̄ō̄th̄ō̄t, ph̄óm m̄āj kh̄āwcaj, kh̄āw b̄ò̄k
w̄āa araj na khráp

Student A: m̄yakhynn̄fī, kh̄āw paj ñaanl̄ían̄ lǣj noon
d̄ȳk paj ñò̄j

25.4 VOCABULARY

b̄ȳa	to be bored
d̄āj	to get, obtain, procure
h̄ŭ̄a (h̄ŭ̄a)	head
(pen) kh̄āj	(to have) (a) fever
(pen) kh̄ājw̄at	(to have) flu
l̄ū̄kn̄ó̄j (khon)	subordinate
lyym	to forget

THAI BASIC COURSE

nâabyà	to be dull
naŋ (rŷaŋ)	movie (story)
ŋuâŋŋoɔn	to be sleepy
pùat	to ache, have a pain
raaŋwan (jàaŋ)	prize (kind)
(pen) rôok àhiwaa	(to have) cholera
(pen) rôok bìt	(to have) dysentery
(pen) rôok sâjtan	(to have) appendicitis
sanùk	to be amusing, to be fun, to have a good time
sĭisà	head (elegant word)
tès } ta }	cháaw very early
thóoŋ	stomach, intestinal area
(pen) wàt	(to have) a cold

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-SIX

26.0 BASIC DIALOG: Discussion of Wedding Gifts

- A: khun sawàt há?
thǎam araj nòoj, dâj máj
- B: jindii há?
- A: wan aathít níi, phǒm dâj
ráp chœen paj ñaanlían
- B: ñaan araj há?
- A: ñaan tènñaan
phǒm máj sâap wâa
ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii
- B: hâj khǒoncháj sihá
- A: chên araj mân
- B: chên khryañkhrua
sámrap câwsáaw,
khryañ cháj faj fáa
rý khǒon sǔajsǔaj
sámrap tèn bãan
- A: tœonthií khun tènñaan,
khun dâj khǒonkhwǎn
araj mân há?
- B: phǒm dâj thán ñeen lé khǒon há?
phýan baan khon kô hâj khǒon,
baan khon kô hâj ñeen
jâat jâat sùan mâak hâj ñeen
- Mr. Sawat, may I ask you something?
Gladly.
- This Sunday I received an invitation to a party.
What kind of a party?
- A wedding.
I don't know what I should buy to give them.
Give something to use.
- What for example?
Kitchen utensils for the bride, electrical devices or pretty things to decorate the house with.
- When you got married, what are some of the presents you got?
I got money and things.
Some friends gave things; some gave money. Most of the relatives gave money.

THAI BASIC COURSE

26.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG

- a) Note the following variant forms of the male and female polite particles:

<u>Statement:</u>	<u>Formal</u>	<u>Informal</u>
Male	khráp	háʔ
Female	khâ	hâ/há

Question:

Male	khráp	háʔ
Female	khá	há

- b) The relationship between cheen 'to invite' and dâj ráp cheen 'to be invited' is similar to the active: passive voice relationship in English.

khâw cheen phôm paj naanlian 'They invited me (to go) to a party.'

phôm dâj ráp cheen paj naanlian 'I was invited (to go) to a party.'

- c) Compounds like thaaŋ + roonrian refer to institutions as agents rather than as places. Observe the following examples:

thaaŋ roonrian hâj nânsýy phôm 'The school gave me some books.'

thaaŋ râatchakaan hâj nœn roonrian pii la pèst phan bàat 'The government gives 8,000 baht a year to the school.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

26.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) The object complement of hâj 'to give' normally precedes the personal complement as in the following example:

kháw hâj nánsŷy phǒm 'He gave me a book.'

1. Specifier phrases of the object complement follow immediately after it (i.e. before the personal complement).

kháw hâj nánsŷy thîi kháw plæ 'He gave me some books
phǒm he had translated.'

kháw hâj nánsŷy sǒɔŋ lêm nán 'He gave me those two
phǒm books.'

2. Quantifier phrases of the object complement occur after the personal complement:

kháw hâj nánsŷy phǒm sǒɔŋ lêm 'He gave me two books.'

kháw hâj nánsŷy kháw khon la 'He gave them two books
2 lêm apiece.'

- b) Constructions of the type khon la 2 lêm 'two books apiece' are called Distributive constructions. They are used to refer to the distribution of objects according to a certain ratio. The distribution may refer to space as in the example above, or it may refer to time. Examples of each type are given below:

1. Space distribution:

kháw hâj nánsŷy nákrian khon 'He gave the students
la sǒɔŋ lêm two books apiece.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. Time distribution:

kháw hâj nən khoncháj dyan 'He gave his servant
la 800 bàat 800 baht a month.'

- c) kô frequently occurs before the main verb phrase in each of the sentences in parallel sentence constructions. It is not translated.

nákrian baan khon kô kèn, baan 'Some students are good;
khon kô mâj kèn some aren't.'

- d) When Noun Phrases with more than one noun head are replaced by Classifier Phrases, the classifier used in the replacement is determined by the types of nouns in the Noun Phrase:

<u>Noun Phrase</u>	<u>Classifier Phrase Replacement</u>
<p><u>thán</u> <u>khruu</u> <u>lé</u> <u>mǔo</u> 'Both teachers and doctors.'</p>	<p><u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>khon</u> 'both kinds of people'</p>
<p><u>thán</u> <u>nən</u> <u>lé</u> <u>aahǎan</u> 'Both money and food'</p>	<p><u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>jàan</u> 'both kinds of things'</p>
<p><u>thán</u> <u>krunthêep</u> <u>lé</u> <u>chianmàj</u> 'Both Bangkok and, Chiangmai.'</p>	<p><u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>hèen</u> (or) <u>thán</u> <u>sǔon</u> <u>myan</u> 'both places' (or) 'both cities'</p>

- e) When di occurs with questions, it may indicate that the person asking the question is requesting advice (whether a certain course of action is good, suitable, or advisable) or is asking for a suggestion. The response, if short and definite, usually ends with sikhráp.

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Question</u> + <u>di</u>	<u>Response</u>
phǒm ca hâj araj <u>di</u> 'What shall I give?'	hâj khǒncháj <u>sihá</u> 'Give something useful.'

26.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaanlían They invited me to a party.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaanlían I got an invitation to a party.
2. kháw chœen phǒm paj ñaan tènñaan khǒn kháw She invited me to her wedding.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan tènñaankhǒn kháw I received an invitation to her wedding.
3. kháw chœen phǒm paj prachum thîi myan bóssatân He invited me to a meeting in Boston.	phǒm dâj ráp chœen paj prachum thîi myan bóssatân I received an invitation to a meeting in Boston.
4. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut He didn't invite me to the party at the Embassy.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan thîi sathǎanthûut I didn't get an invitation to the party at the Embassy.
5. kháw mâj dâj chœen phǒm paj ñaan nákrían kàw He didn't invite me to the party for former students.	phǒm mâj dâj ráp chœen paj ñaan nákrían kàw I didn't get an invitation to the party for former students.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw hâj araj khun khráp What did he give you?	kháw hâj ñen phǒm khráp He gave me some money.
2. thaang roonriian hâj araj khun khráp What did the school give you?	thaang roonriian hâj nánsǎy riian phǒm khráp The school gave me a textbook.
3. toon thǐi khun tènnaan, naaj khǒon khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your boss give you when you got married?	toon thǐi phǒm tènnaan naaj khǒon phǒm hâj wítthajú phǒm khráp When I got married, my boss gave me a radio.
4. wan khrítamâat pii níi, khun ca hâj araj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to give your wife this Christmas?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca hâj khrýangkhrua kháw khráp I think I'll give her kitchen implements.
5. phǐichaaaj khun hâj araj khun khráp What did your older brother give you?	phǐichaaaj phǒm hâj pàakkaa phǒm khráp. My older brother gave me a pen.
6. khun ca hâj araj lûukchaaaj khun khráp What are you going to give your son?	phǒm ca hâj dinsǒo lé samùt lûukchaaaj phǒm khráp I'm going to give my son a pencil and a notebook.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. phŷan phŷan khun hâj khǒŋ kháw hâj nən phǒm khráp
khwǎn araj khun khráp
What kind of presents did
your friends give you? They gave me money.
8. nákpahasáa khon nán hâj kháw hâj nánsŷy thŷi kháw
araj khun khráp plɛɛ phǒm khráp
What did that linguist
give you? He gave me a book
he translated.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun phǒo khun mɛɛ khǒŋ khun hâj nən khun thâwraj khráp How much money did your parents give you?	khun phǒo khun mɛɛ khǒŋ phǒm hâj nən phǒm hâa phan bàat khráp My parents gave me five thousand baht.
2. kháw hâj nən khoncháj kháw dyan la thâwraj khráp How much does he give his servants per month?	kháw hâj nən khoncháj kháw dyan.la sŷirǒoj bàat khráp He gives his servants four hundred baht per month.
3. thaarâatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la thâwraj khráp How much does the government give the school a year?	thaarâatchakaan hâj nən roonrian pii la pɛɛt phan bàat khráp The government gives the school 8,000 baht a year.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. thaangroonrian hâj nânsÿy
nâkrian khon la kîi lêm
khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books per student
does the school give?</p> | <p>thaangroonrian hâj nânsÿy
nâkrian khon la sǒng lêm
khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school gives two books
to each student.</p> |
| <p>5. thaangráan hâj khǒng khwǎn
kháw kîi chin khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many presents did
the shop give them?</p> | <p>thaangráan hâj khǒng khwǎn
kháw sǎam chin khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The shop gave them
three presents.</p> |
| <p>6. kháw hâj khǒngkhwǎn khun
kîi jàan khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many kinds of presents
did he give you?</p> | <p>kháw hâj khǒngkhwǎn (kèε)
phǒm jàan diaw khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave me one kind of
present.</p> |
| <p>7. kháw hâj nânsÿy hōnsamùt
kîi lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How many books did he
give to the library?</p> | <p>kháw hâj nânsÿy (kèε)
hōnsamùt hâa sǐp lêm khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He gave fifty books to
the library.</p> |
| <p>8. thaangkrasuaṅtâanprathêet hâj
ṅen khâa nânsÿy khun khon
la thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much did the State
Department give each
person for books?
(lit. give you per person.)</p> | <p>thaangkrasuaṅtâanprathêet hâj
ṅen khâa nânsÿy raw khon
la sǎam sǐp dōo lâa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The State Department gave
us 30 dollars per person
for books.</p> |
| <p>9. khun hâj ṅen lûuk wan la
thâwraj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">How much money per day
do you give your child?</p> | <p>phǒm hâj ṅen lûuk wan la
sǒng bàat khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I give him/her 2 baht
per day.</p> |

NOTE: kèε 'to' may be used in rather formal style or in cases where ambiguity might occur as in the examples above in which the receiver might be confused with possessor.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khraj hâj nánsýy sǒŋ lêm níi khun khráp Who gave you these two books?</p>	<p>nákphaasǎa hâj (nánsýy sǒŋ lêm níi) phǒm khráp The linguist gave me these two books.</p>
<p>2. khraj hâj samùt sìi lêm níi khun khráp Who gave you these four notebooks?</p>	<p>phýan phǒm hâj samùt sìi lêm níi phǒm khráp My friend gave me these four notebooks.</p>
<p>3. khraj hâj pàakkaa dâam níi khun khráp Who gave you this pen?</p>	<p>khun ànúróot hâj pàakkaa dâam níi phǒm khráp Anuroj gave me this pen.</p>
<p>4. khraj hâj rûup baj níi khun khráp Who gave you this picture?</p>	<p>phátthanaakoŋ khon nán hâj rûup baj níi phǒm khráp That community development worker gave me this picture.</p>
<p>5. khraj hâj phěnthîi sǒŋ phèn níi khun khráp Who gave you these two maps?</p>	<p>boorisàt námman hâj phěnthîi sǒŋ phènníi phǒm khráp The gasoline company gave me these two maps.</p>
<p>6. khraj hâj nánsýy phaasǎa thaj sìp lêm níi kèe hǒŋsamùt khráp Who gave these ten Thai language books to the library?</p>	<p>krasuaŋ kaantàanprathêet ameerikan hâj nánsýy sìp lêm níi kèe hǒŋsamùt khráp The American Department of State gave these ten books to the library.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Transformation Substitution Drill

Instructor: kháw hâj nánsǎy lêm níi phǒm
: nánsǎy sǒn lêm

Student: kháw hâj nánsǎy phǒm sǒn lêm

Continue by substituting the following items in the appropriate structure.

1. pàakkaa dâam níi
2. kâwǐi sǎam tua
3. nən camnuan níi
4. nən hâa rǒoj bàat
5. nən khâa aahǎan
6. bâan lǎn níi
7. dinsǒo thēn nán
8. weelaa sǒn chûamoon

f) Sentence Construction Drill

Using the cue words given student 1 will form a question with hâj as the main verb. Student 2 will give an appropriate answer. (Study the examples below carefully.)

Example 1.

I: phyân phyân , araj, khun

S 1: phyân phyân hâj araj khun khráp

S 2: kháw hâj nánsǎy phǒm khráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

Example 2:

- I: phyan phyan , khun, nansyy khi lem
S 1: phyan phyan haj nansyy khun khi lem khrap
S 2: khaw haj nansyy phom sorn lem khrap

Example 3:

- I: phyan phyan , khun, nansyy lem ni, ryy
S 1: phyan phyan haj nansyy lem ni khun ryy khrap
S 2: khrap (or) plaaaw khrap

Example 4:

- I: khraj, khun, nansyy sorn lem ni
S 1: khraj haj nansyy sorn lem ni khun khrap
S 2: khruu haj nansyy sorn lem ni phom khrap

Continue by using the following cue words:

1. cawnathai juusit, khun , araj
2. khun praphaat, khun, phenthai prathetthaj, khi phen
3. krasuanprathet, nakrian, nen khannansyy, khon la thawraj
4. khun, phanraja khun, khonkhwan, thuk pii, rylaaaw
5. khraj, khun, samut lem ni
6. khraj, khun, samut sorn lem
7. khraj, khun, to tua ni
8. khaw, khun, nen khi bat
9. khaw, khon chaj, nen, dyan la, khi bat
10. khun con, khun, paakka dham ni, ryy
11. khaw, phom, weelaa, nyn chumoon

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What did you buy your wife?	phǒm sýy pàakkaa hâj kháw nỳn dâam khráp I bought her a pen.
2. wan khrítsamâat pii nâa khun ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa khun khráp What are you going to buy your wife for Christmas next year?	phǒm ca sýy naalikaa hâj kháw khráp I'm going to buy a watch for her.
3. wan tènnaan khǒon phýan khun khun sýy araj hâj kháw khráp What did you buy for your friend on his wedding day?	phǒm sýy khǒon sǎmràp tèn bâan hâj kháw khráp I bought things for deco- rating the house for him.
4. pii thîi lésw phanrajaa khun sýy araj hâj khun What did your wife buy for you last year?	kháw sýy sýa hâj phǒm nỳn tua She bought a shirt for for me.
5. khun ca sýy araj hâj phýan khun What are you going to buy for your friend?	phǒm khít wâa ca sýy nánsýy diidi hâj kháw I think I'll buy him some good books.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Familiarization Drill

1. A: khun sǒmsǐi hâj rûup phǒm
Miss Somsri gave me some pictures.
- B: khun dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi kǐi baj khráp
How many pictures did you get from Miss Somsri?
- A: phǒm dâj rûup càak khun sǒmsǐi hâa baj khráp
I got five pictures from Miss Somsri.
2. A: khun phôo khun mĕe hâj nĕn phǒm
My parents gave me some money.
- B: khun dâj nĕn càak khun phôokhun mĕe kǐi bàat khráp
How many baht did you get from your parents?
- A: phǒm dâj nĕn càak khunphôo khun mĕe lăaj rǒoj
bàat khráp
I got several hundred baht from my parents.
3. A: thaaj sathăanthûut hâj nánjsǐy tàanjtâanj kĕe
roonrian raw.
The Embassy gave various books to our school.
- B: raw dâj nánjsǐy càak sathăanthûut kǐi lĕm khráp
How many books did we get from the Embassy?
- A: raw dâj nánjsǐy tàanj tàanj càak sathăanthûut raaw
raaw săamsip lĕm khráp
We got about 30 different books from the Embassy.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. A: krasuan tàanprathêet hâj ñen khâa nânsÿy raw
The State Department gave us money for
buying books.

B: raw dâj ñen khâa nânsÿy khon la thâwràj khráp
How much money did each person get for
buying books?

A: raw dâj ñen khâa nânsÿy khon la sãamsìp doolâa khráp
We got 30 dollars a person (for buying books).

1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. khõõnkhwǎn	phõm dâj <u>khõõnkhwǎn</u> I got presents.
2.	phõm dâj <u>ñen lǎaj rój</u> I got several hundred (baht).
3. ñaan	phõm dâj <u>ñen</u> I got work.
4. bâan	phõm dâj <u>bâan</u> I got a house.
5. khõõncháj	phõm dâj <u>khõõncháj</u> I got things to use.
6. nânsÿy 2 lêm	phõm dâj <u>nânsÿy sõõn lêm</u> I got two books.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 7. khrýaŋ fajfáa | phóm dâj <u>khrýaŋ fajfáa</u>
I got electrical equipment. |
| 8. wítthajú | phóm dâj <u>wítthajú</u>
I got a radio. |
| 9. thii wii | phóm dâj <u>thii wii</u>
I got a TV. |
| 10. kâwii màj | phóm dâj <u>kâwii màj</u>
I got a new chair. |
| 11. bæe thoorasàp
khǒŋ kháw | phóm dâj <u>bæe thoorasàp</u> khǒŋ kháw
I got her telephone number. |
| 12. khansèn dii | phóm dâj <u>khansèn dii</u>
I got good grades. |

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. phóm khuan ca hâj araj kháw What shall I give him?	hâj náŋsýy sikhráp Give a book.
2. phóm khuan ca sýy araj hâj phanrajaa dii What shall I give my wife?	sýy khrýaŋkhrua hâj kháw sikhráp Buy some kitchen utensils for her.
3. phóm khuan ca thăam khraj dii Who shall I ask?	thăam nákpahasăa sikhráp Ask the linguist.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. phǒm khuan ca thaan thîi thaan thîi ráanníi sikráp
ráannǎj dii
Which restaurant shall Eat at this restaurant.
I eat at?
5. phǒm khuan ca paj janṇaj dii paj rótfaj sikhráp
How shall I go? Go by train.

k) Expansion Drill

1. araj dii
sýy araj dii
khuan ca sýy araj hâj kháw dii
phǒm ca sýy khǒṅkhwǎn araj hâj kháw dii
2. khraj dii
chæen khraj dii
ca chæen khraj dii
raw khuan ca chæen khraj dii
3. khraj dii
thǎam khraj dii
khuan ca thǎam khraj dii
phǒm khuan ca thǎam khraj dii
4. nǎj dii
thîinǎj dii
thaan thîinǎj dii
thaan aahǎan thîinǎj dii
thaan aahǎan khlaanwan thîinǎj dii
khuan ca thaان aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii
raw khuan ca thaان aahǎan klaanwan thîinǎj dii

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. nǎj dii
bòt nǎj dii
rian bòt nǎj dii
khuān ca rian bòt nǎj dii
raw khuān ca rian bòt nǎj dii
6. nǎj dii
wan nǎj dii
lían wan nǎj dii
mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii
khuān ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii
raw khuān ca mii ñaanlían wan nǎj dii
7. jaṅṅaj dii
tham jaṅṅaj dii
khuān ca tham jaṅṅaj dii
phǒm khuān ca tham jaṅṅaj dii

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

sámràp means 'for' in the sense of function (for doing such and such).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hōṅnám hōṅníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this toilet for?	hōṅnám hōṅníi, <u>sámràp</u> phūujǐṅ This toilet is for women. (mâj châj <u>sámràp</u> phūuchaaj) It's not for men.
2. kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khraj Who is this chair for?	kâwīi tuaníi, <u>sámràp</u> khruu This chair is for the teacher. (mâj châj <u>sámràp</u> nákrían) It's not for students.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. khrÿaᅇkhrua chútníi, sámràp khraj
Who is this set of kitchen utensils for?
khrÿaᅇkhrua chútníi sámràp cawsǎaw
It's for the bride.
(mâj châj sámràp câwbàaw.)
It's not for the groom.
4. ᅇeᅇ camnuan níi, pen ᅇeᅇ sámràp tham araj
What is this amount of money for (for doing what)?
ᅇeᅇ camnuan níi pen ᅇeᅇ sámràp sýy aahǎan
This sum of money is for food.
5. náᅇsýy lêm níi, cháj sámràp tham araj khráp
What is this book used for?
náᅇsýy lêm níi, cháj sámràp sǒᅇn nákrían
This book is used for teaching students.
6. hᅇᅇníi cháj sámràp tham araj
What is this room used for?
hᅇᅇníi cháj sámràp prachum nákrían
This room is used for student meetings.
7. bâan lǎaj lǎᅇ thǐi jùu tronkan khâam kàp sathǎanthûut pen thǐi sámràp tham araj khráp
What are the (several) houses opposite the Embassy for?
pen thǐi sámràp phanáᅇᅇᅇᅇᅇ sathǎanthûut jùu khráp
They are for Embassy employees to live in.

THAI BASIC COURSE

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. thîi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa
kháw cháj nánsǎy araj
What books do they use
at the language school? | thîi roonrian sǎon phaasǎa,
kháw cháj nánsǎy khǎon roonrian
At the language school
they use the school's
books. |
| 2. khun cháj rót araj
What kind of car
did you use? | phǎm cháj rót ameerikan
I used an American car. |
| 3. kháw cháj nǎn wan la kǐi
doo lâa
How many dollars does
he spend per day? | kháw cháj nǎn wan la hâa
sǐp sen.
He spends 50 cents
a day. |
| 4. thîi myan thaj, kháw cháj
nǎen araj
What kind of money do
they use in Thailand? | thîi myan thaj, kháw cháj
nǎen bàat
In Thailand they use
'bahts'. |
| 5. khun cháj araj (sámràp)
khǎan nánsǎy
What do you use for
writing? | phǎm cháj thán pàakkaa lé
dinsǎo (sámràp) khǎan nánsǎy
I use both pen and pencil
for writing. |

n) Expansion Drill

1. baan khon pen thahǎan
nákrian baan khon pen thahǎan
nákrian thîinîi baan khon pen thahǎan

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. baan lêm dii
nânsÿy baan lêm dii
nânsÿy phaasăa thaj baan lêm dii
3. baan khrÿan cháj mâj dâj
khrÿan baan khrÿan cháj mâj dâj
khrÿan fajfáa baan khrÿan cháj mâj dâj
4. baan tambon mâj mi náam
tambon baan tambon mâj mi náam
tambon thîi jùu klaj klaj baan tambon mâj mi náam

o) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. phÿan | <u>phÿan</u> baan khon kô hâj khǒon, baan khon kô hâj nən
Some friends gave things; some, money. |
| 2. khruu | <u>khruu</u> baan khon kô hâj khǒon, baan khon kô hâj nən
Some teachers gave things; some, money. |
| 3. mǒo | <u>mǒo</u> baan khon kô hâj khǒon, baan khon kô hâj nən
Some doctors gave things; some, money. |
| 4. khâarâatchakaan | <u>khâarâatchakaan</u> baan khon kô hâj khǒon, baan khon kô hâj nən
Some employees gave things; some, money. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. cawnâathîi cawnâathîi baan khon kô hâj khǒŋ, baan
khon kô hâj nŋn
Some officials gave things; some, money.

p) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kèn	nákrian baan khon kô <u>kèn</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>kèn</u> Some students are good; some aren't.
2. sǔaj	nákrian baan khon kô <u>sǔaj</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>sǔaj</u> Some students are pretty; some aren't.
3. phûujǐn	<u>phûujǐn</u> baan khon kô sǔaj, baan khon kô mâj sǔaj Some women are pretty, some aren't.
4. dii	phûujǐn baan khon kô <u>dii</u> , baan khon kô mâj <u>dii</u> Some women are good, some aren't.
5. nánsǔy	<u>nánsǔy</u> baan lêm kô dii, baan lêm kô mâj dii Some books are good, some aren't.
6. sanùk	nánsǔy baan lêm kô <u>sanùk</u> , baan lêm kô mâj <u>sanùk</u> Some books are amusing, some aren't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

q) Substitution Drill (Using baaŋ with time expressions)

Cue

Pattern

1. wan baaŋ wan kháw kô maa, baaŋ wan kháw kô mâj maa
 Some days he comes, some he doesn't.
2. chûamoon baaŋ chûamoon kháw kô maa, baaŋ chûamoon kháw kô
 mâj maa
 Some hours he comes, some he doesn't.
3. khrán baaŋ khrán kháw kô maa, baaŋ khrán kháw kô mâj maa
 Some times he comes, some times he doesn't.
4. wan baaŋ wan kháw kô maa, baaŋ wan kháw kô mâj maa
 Some days he comes, some he doesn't.
5. paj thamnaan baaŋ wan kháw kô paj thamnaan, baaŋ wan kháw kô
 mâj paj thamnaan
 Some days he goes to work, some he doesn't.
6. jùu bân baaŋ wan kháw kô jùu bân, baaŋ wan kháw kô mâj
 jùu bân
 Some days she's at home; some she isn't.
7. aakàat dii baaŋ wan aakàat kô dii, baaŋ wan aakàat kô mâj dii
 Some days the weather's fine; some it isn't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun rúucàk thǎn sǎamii lé <u>phanrajaa rýkhráp</u> Do you know both the husband and wife?	khráp, phǒm rúucàk kháw <u>thán sǒn khon</u> Yes, I know both of them.
2. khun chǒp <u>thán phaasǎathaj</u> <u>lé aahǎanthaj rýkhráp</u> Do you like both the Thai language and Thai food?	khráp, phǒm chǒp <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn jàan</u> Yes. I like both (things).
3. khun khǎej jù <u>thán farànsèet</u> <u>lé sapeen rýkhráp</u> Have you lived in both France and Spain?	khráp, phǒm khǎej jù <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn prathêet</u> Yes, I have lived in both countries.
4. khun phûut dâj <u>thán phaasǎa</u> <u>ciin lé phaasǎa rátsia rýkhráp</u> Can you speak both Chinese and Russian?	khráp, phǒm phûut dâj <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn phaasǎa</u> Yes, I can speak both languages.
5. khun khǎej jù <u>thán chianmàj</u> <u>lé krunthêep rýkhráp</u> Have you lived in both Chiangmai and Bangkok?	khráp, phǒm khǎej jù <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn hèn</u> Yes, I have lived in both places.
6. khun hâj <u>thán nèn lé aahǎan</u> kháw rýy khráp Did you give him both money and food?	khráp, phǒm hâj kháw <u>thán</u> <u>sǒn jàan</u> Yes, I gave him both things.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. kháw dâj khansɛn dii thán khraaw khráp, kháw dâj khansɛn dii
thîi lésw lé khraawníi rýy knráp thán sǒɔŋ khraaw (khrán)
- Did he get good grades both Yes, he got good
the time before and this grades both times.
time?

s) Noun Compound Drill

Form Noun Compounds like khryân + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noun} \\ \text{Verb} \end{array} \right.$

<u>Verb</u> or <u>Noun</u>	<u>Noun Compound</u>
1. cháj 'to use'	khryâncháj 'things to see'
2. khrua 'kitchen'	khryânkhrua 'kitchen utensils'
3. khǎan 'to write'	khryânkhǎan 'writing equipment'
4. tèn bân 'to decorate a house'	khryântèn bân 'house decoration'

26.4 EXERCISES

- a) Students will discuss invitations they have received specifying type of activity, time, and place.
- b) Students will discuss various gifts they have given and received.
- c) One student will ask another's opinion about something he is considering doing (giving a gift, etc.). The second will give his opinion.

THAI BASIC COURSE

26.5 VOCABULARY

anúrôot	Anuroj (male first name)
bæe	number
camnuan	amount
câwsăaw (khon)	bride
cháj	to use (to do something), be used for, to spend (money)
chín	piece (classifier for things)
chút	set of (something)
há/hâ	the male and female polite particles informal for khráp or khâ, in responses
jàaŋ	classifier for things
jâat/jâatjâat	relative(s)
kàw	old (of non living things), former (of living and non living things)
kèe	to, for
khâa	fee, cost, price, value
khansən (khansən)	grade, score point(s)
khoncháj (khon)	servant
khŏŋcháj (jàaŋ, an, chín)	something useful, utensils
khrÿaŋ cháj fájfáa (khrÿaŋ)	electrical
khrÿaŋ faj fáa (khrÿaŋ)	electrical equipment
khryânkhrua (khrÿaŋ)	kitchen utensils
khrÿaŋ ryan (khrÿaŋ)	furniture
krasuaŋ kaantàaŋ prathêet	State Department, Foreign Ministry
khraaw	time(s) (occasion)

THAI BASIC COURSE

khráŋ	time(s) (occasion) classifier for time
khrítsamâat	Christmas
<u>la</u> or <u>lá</u>	per, a, the
mâŋ	some, any (pronominal, another form of <u>bâaŋ</u>)
naaj (khon)	boss
nákphaasáa (khon)	linguistic scientist
nákrian kàw (khon)	former student
phanákŋaan (khon)	employee
pháthanaakoon (khon)	community development worker
plæ	to translate
prachum	meeting
sámràp	for
si	particle indicating definiteness or emphasis
súanmâak	most of, in the main
tèŋ	to decorate
thii wii (khrýaŋ)	TV
wítthajú (khrýaŋ, an)	radio

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

27.0 BASIC DIALOG: Sending a Servant for a Taxi

naaj:	chûaj rîak thésîi hâj (phôm) khan nyn bòok kháw wâa paj sǎthoon læej cátsamèk paj nòj	Please call a taxi for me. Tell him (I'm) going to Sathorn a little past JUSMAG.
khoncháj:	ca hâj kháw khooj dûaj máj khá	Will you have him wait?
naaj:	mâj tôn	That's not necessary.
	(khoncháj klàp maa)	(The servant returns)
naaj:	dâj rôt máj	Did you get one?
khoncháj:	dâj khà	Yes, I did.
naaj:	kháw aw thâwràj	How much does he want?
khoncháj:	síp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht.
naaj:	mâj phɛɛn paj lǎ thammadaa, weelaa chán rîak eɛn , kháw khít pèet bàat thâwnán	That's not too much? Usually when I get one myself, they charge only 8 baht.
khoncháj:	tɔɔnníi, kamlan læɛk naan.thésîi hǎa jâak khâ.tòɔ mâj khôj dâj	It's quitting time now. Taxis are hard to find. Bargaining is hardly possible.

THAI BASIC COURSE

27.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) chán 'I' is rarely used by men except when speaking to persons of inferior social status. Women use it more often. They used it (1) with persons of inferior social status, (2) to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.¹
- b) khít thâwràj 'figured or reckoned as how much?' is a reduced form of khít raakhaa thâwràj 'the price is reckoned as how much?' or khít khâadoojsaan thâwràj 'The fare is reckoned as how much?'.
- c) After stative verbs like phsɛn 'expensive', kɛn paj may occur with the meaning 'excessively, too'. paj occurs in the same position as a reduced form of kɛn paj.
- d) toon thîi and weelaa both refer to time and may be translated 'when'; however, weelaa usually refers to a special occasion; weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj 'When (ever) I don't understand', whereas, toon thîi refers to a particular period of time toon thîi khun pen dèk 'When you were a child'.

27.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) hâj occurs in constructions of the following kind:
1. As main verb in the sentence (see 26.2a),
 2. As secondary verb with the meaning 'for the benefit or, in place of someone else', chuâj khàp rôt hâj (phǒm) 'Please drive for me' khâw tham aahǎan hâj khun thaan 'He makes food for you (to eat).'
 3. Or as the main verb with a sentence complement. In constructions of this type it has causative meaning. khun ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj 'What are you going to have your children study?'

¹See Noss, pg. 100.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) The verbs bòok 'tell', khǎo 'request', anujâat 'permit' and sàŋ 'order' (like jaak, see 22.2b) are followed by hâj plus Sentence Complement when the utterance tends to be causative in effect.

kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw

'He told me to wait for him.'

kháw anujâat hâj phǒm rian phaasǎathaj

'He permitted me to study Thai.'

Compare the following two sentences:

1. kháw hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He had me wait for him.

The manner in which the request or command is delivered is not specified.

2. kháw bòok hâj phǒm khooj kháw 'He told me to wait for him.'

The manner in which the command or request is delivered is specified.

- c) eeŋ occurs at the end of clauses and has the meaning 'by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help or influence'¹.

phǒm paj sýy (kaafɛɛ) eeŋ kh ráp

'I went to buy coffee myself'.

(Nobody bought it for me.)

¹See Noss, pg. 93

THAI BASIC COURSE

27.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khraj tòo raakhaa <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who did your bargaining for you?	phÿan khon thaj khǒon phǒm tòo (raakhaa) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp A Thai friend of mine did the bargaining for me.
2. khraj khàp rǒt <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who drove the car for you?	phǒm khàp <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I drove (it) myself. (mâj mi khraj khàp hâj) No one drove for me.
3. khraj tham aahǎan <u>hâj</u> khun thaan khráp Who cooks for you?	phanrajaa phǒm tham (aahǎan) <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife cooks for me.
4. phÿan khun paj sÿy kaafɛɛ <u>hâj</u> khun rÿy khráp Did your friend go buy coffee for you?	plàaw khráp, phǒm paj sÿy (kaafɛɛ) <u>eeŋ</u> khráp No, I bought (it) myself.
5. khraj khÿan còtmǎaj chabàp níi <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who wrote this letter for you?	phǒm khÿan <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I wrote it myself.
6. khraj hǎa bǎan <u>hâj</u> khun khráp Who looked for a house for you?	phǒm hǎa <u>eeŋ</u> khráp I looked myself.
7. khraj sÿy aahǎan hâj khun khráp Who bought food for you?	phanrajaa phǒm sÿy <u>hâj</u> phǒm khráp My wife bought it for me.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Transformation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. phanrajaa phǒm	phǒm māj dāj tham aahǎan een I don't cook for myself.	<u>phanrajaa phǒm</u> tham hâj (phǒm) My wife cooks for me.
2. phŷan phǒm	phǒm māj dāj khŷan còtmǎaj chabàp níi een I didn't write this letter myself.	<u>phŷan phǒm</u> khŷan hâj A friend of mine wrote it for me.
3. khun thǎawoon	phǒm māj dāj sýy nánsýy lêm níi een I didn't buy this book myself.	<u>khun thǎawoon</u> sýy hâj Thaworn bought it for me.
4. khon khàprót	phǒm māj dāj khàp rót een I didn't drive myself.	<u>khon khàprót</u> khàp hâj The chauffeur drove for me.
5. kháw	phǒm māj dāj paj sòn còtmǎaj een I didn't send the letter myself.	<u>kháw</u> sòn hâj He sent it for me.
6. kháw	phǒm māj dāj khít een I didn't originate the idea myself.	<u>kháw</u> khít hâj He thought of it for me.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Response Drill

Example 1:

- | | | |
|------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| T: | pàakkaa, phŷan | pen, friend |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp | What did you buy? |
| S 2: | sýy <u>pàakkaa</u> khráp | I bought a pen. |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp | |
| S 2: | sýy hâj <u>phŷan</u> khráp | I bought (it) for a friend. |

Example 2:

- | | | |
|------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| T: | nánsŷy, tua een | book, oneself |
| S 1: | sýy araj khráp | What did you buy? |
| S 2: | sýy <u>nánsŷy</u> khráp | I bought a book. |
| S 1: | sýy hâj khraj khráp | Who did you buy it for? |
| S 2: | sýy àan <u>een</u> khráp | I bought (it) to read myself. |

Continue the drill by having two students form questions and answers like those above using the following cue words:

1. nánsŷy, tua een
2. kaafɛɛ, khruu
3. samùt, tua een
4. aahǎan, phanrajaa
5. khǒɔŋ khwǎn, phŷan
6. rót, tua een

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw aw náŋsǎy maa hâj phǒm
He brought a book to me.
2. kháw khǎan còtmǎaj paj hâj khunmêe kháw
He wrote a letter to his mother.
3. kháw sǒŋ còtmǎaj hâj phǒm
He sent a letter to me.
4. kháw khǎaj rót hâj phǒm
He bought a car for me.
5. kháw sǒn phaasǎa thaj hâj phǒm
He taught Thai to me.

f) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| | (khun) ca hâj <u>kháw</u> <u>khooj</u> <u>máj</u>
Will you have him wait? |
| 1. paj kǐi moon | (khun) ca hâj kháw <u>paj</u> <u>kǐi</u> <u>moon</u>
At what time will you have him go? |
| 2. phǒm | (khun) ca hâj <u>phǒm</u> paj kǐi moon
At what time will you have me go? |
| 3. tham araj | (khun) ca hâj phǒm <u>tham</u> <u>araj</u>
What will you cause me to do? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. lûuk khun (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun tham araj
What will you have your children do?
5. rian araj (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun rian araj
What will you have your children study?
6. sýy araj (khun) ca hâj lûuk khun sýy araj
What will you have your children buy?
7. phǒm (khun) ca hâj phǒm sýy araj.
What will you have me buy?
8. tham janṇaj (khun) ca hâj phǒm tham janṇaj
How will you have me do (it)?
9. bòok kháw máj (khun) ca hâj phǒm bòok kháw máj
Will you have me tell him?
10. khoṛj thfinǎj (khun) ca hâj phǒm khoṛj thfinǎj
Where will you have me wait?

g) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

kháw hâj théksǎi khoṛj
He had the taxi wait.

1. phǒm kháw hâj phǒm khoṛj
He had me wait.

2. paj sýy khṛṇ kháw hâj phǒm paj sýy khṛṇ
He let me go shopping.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|----------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 3. phák phòn | kháw hâj phǒm <u>phák</u> <u>phòn</u> | He let me take a rest. |
| 4. mǎo hâj | <u>mǎo</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm phák phòn | The doctor had me take a rest. |
| 5. thaán jaa | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>thaán</u> <u>jaa</u> | The doctor had me take medicine. |
| 6. jùt thamṇaan | mǎo hâj phǒm <u>jùt</u> <u>thamṇaan</u> | The doctor had me stop working. |
| 7. naaj phǒm hâj | <u>naaj</u> <u>phǒm</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm jùt thamṇaan | My boss had me stop working. |
| 8. thoo maa hǎa khun | naaj phǒm hâj phǒm <u>thoo</u> <u>maa</u> <u>hǎa</u> <u>khun</u> | My boss had me call you. |

h) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. kháw phûut kàp khoncháj 'chuâj riâk thésǎi hâj khan nyŋ' He said to a servant 'call a taxi for me'.	kháw hâj khoncháj tham araj What did he have the servant do?	kháw hâj khoncháj riâk thésǎi hâj kháw He had the servant call a taxi.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>2. kháw phûut kàp
khun 'paj hǎa
khun cǝon nǝj'</p> <p>He said to you,
'Go see John'.</p> | <p>kháw hâj khun
tham araj</p> <p>What did he
have you do?</p> | <p>kháw hâj phǝm paj
hǎa khun cǝon</p> <p>He had me go to
see John.</p> |
| <p>3. mĕε phûut kàp
lûuk 'nâŋ loŋ'</p> <p>The mother said
to her child,
'Sit down'.</p> | <p>mĕε hâj lûuk
tham araj</p> <p>What did the
mother have
her child do?</p> | <p>mĕε hâj lûuk nâŋ
loŋ</p> <p>The mother had
her child sit
down.</p> |
| <p>4. khruu phûut kàp
nákrian 'phûut
taam khruu'</p> <p>The teacher said
to the student
'Say after me'.</p> | <p>khruu hâj nákrian
tham araj</p> <p>What did the
teacher have
the student do?</p> | <p>khruu hâj nákrian
phûut taam khruu</p> <p>The teacher had
the student repeat
after her.</p> |
| <p>5. khun sawàt phûut
kàp khun sǝmsàk
'chuâj sǝŋ náŋsǝy
lĕmnán hâj phǝm
nǝj'.</p> <p>Sawat said to
Somsak 'Please
send me that
book'.</p> | <p>khun sawàt hâj
khun sǝmsàk tham
araj</p> <p>What did Sawat
have Somsak do?</p> | <p>khun sawàt hâj khun
sǝmsàk sǝŋ náŋsǝy</p> <p>Sawat had Somsak
send him a book.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw bòok hâj phǒm bòok khun
He told me to tell you.
2. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm bòok khun
He ordered me to tell you.
3. kháw khǒo hâj phǒm bòok khun
He requested me to tell you.
4. kháw anújaât hâj phǒm bòok khun
He allowed me to tell you.

j) Transformation-Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
(Student 1 to Student 2)	(Teacher)	(Student 2)
1. 'chuâj bòok hâj khun cœn paj hǎa phǒm nõj 'Please tell John to come to see me'.	kháw bòok hâj khun tham araj What did he tell you to do?	kháw bòok hâj phǒm chuâj bòok hâj khun cœn paj hǎa kháw He told me to tell John to go to see him.
2. 'paj dǎawní' Go now.	kháw sàn hâj khun tham araj What did he order you to do?	kháw sàn hâj phǒm paj dǎawní He ordered me to go now.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>3. 'karunaa athíbaaj
nòoj, dâj máj
khráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Please explain.</p> | <p>kháw khǒo hâj khun
tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he
ask you to do?</p> | <p>kháw khǒo hâj phǒm
athíbaaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to
explain.</p> |
| <p>4. 'jyyn jùu thîinîi,
jàa paj nǎj'.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Stand here.
Don't go</p> | <p>kháw sàŋ hâj khun
tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he
order you to
do?</p> | <p>kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm
jyyn jùu thîinîi,
mâj hâj phǒm paj nǎj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me to
stand here, not
to go anywhere.</p> |
| <p>5. 'khun khooj phǒm
duâj nakhráp'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Wait for me.</p> | <p>kháw bòok hâj khun
tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he tell
you to do?</p> | <p>kháw bòok hâj phǒm
khooj kháw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me to
wait for him.</p> |
| <p>6. 'karunaa phûut
cháacháa nòoj
dâj máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Could you please
speak slowly.</p> | <p>kháw khǒo hâj khun
tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he
request you
to do?</p> | <p>kháw khǒo hâj phǒm
phûut cháacháa nòoj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me to
speak slowly.</p> |
| <p>7. 'pèet náŋsýy dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You can open
your book.</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj
khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he
permit you
to do?</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj
phǒm pèet náŋsýy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He permitted
me to open
the book.</p> |
| <p>8. 'paj dâj'</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">You may go.</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj
khun tham araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What did he
let you do?</p> | <p>kháw anujâat hâj
phǒm paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He let me go.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Transformation Drill (Change pattern 1 to 2 or vice versa.)

Pattern 1

1. thaarâatchakaan sàŋ hâj
phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj

The government ordered
me to study Thai.

2. kháw anújâat hâj phǒm
òok kòon weelaa

He permitted me to
leave before time.

3. kháw bòok hâj khun chuâj
riâk thésîi hâj kháw

He told you to call
a taxi for him.

4. kháw sàŋ hâj phǒm khooj
jùu thiîniî kòon

He ordered me to
wait here first.

5. kháw anújâat hâj phǒm
rian phaasǎa thaj (dâj)

He permitted me to
study Thai.

6. phanrajaa phǒm khǒo hâj
phǒm paj sýy khǒon hâj
kháw

My wife asked me to
go shopping for her.

Pattern 2

- thaarâatchakaan hâj phǒm
rian phaasǎathaj

The government had
me study Thai.

- kháw hâj phǒm òok kòon
weelaa

He had me leave before
time.

- kháw hâj khun chuâj riâk
thésîi hâj kháw

He had you call a taxi
for him.

- kháw hâj phǒm khooj jùu
thiîniî kòon

He had me wait
here first.

- kháw hâj phǒm rian
phaasǎa thaj (dâj)

He had me study
Thai.

- phanrajaa phǒm hâj phǒm
paj sýy khǒon hâj kháw

My wife had me go
shopping for her.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>7. kháw sàŋ hâj thékstîi
khàp rôt cháacháa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered the taxi
to drive slowly.</p> | <p>kháw hâj thékstîi khàp rôt
cháacháa</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He had the taxi
drive slowly.</p> |
|---|---|

1) Transformation Drill (Change from direct to indirect statement.)

Pattern 1 (direct)

Pattern 2 (indirect)

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. kháw bòok phǒm wâa jàa
duu nánsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He said to me, 'Don't
look at your book.'</p> | <p>kháw bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm
duu nánsǎy</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told me not to
look at my book.</p> |
| <p>2. kháw sàŋ phǒm wâa jàa
bòok khraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me, 'Don't
tell anybody.'</p> | <p>kháw sàŋ <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm
bòok khraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He ordered me not
to tell anybody.</p> |
| <p>3. khruu bòok nákrîan wâa jàa
phûut phaasǎa aŋkrît kan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher said to
the students, 'Don't
speak English.'</p> | <p>khruu bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> nákrîan
phûut phaasǎa aŋkrît kan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The teacher told the
students not to speak
English.</p> |
| <p>4. kháw khǒo phǒm wâa jàa
phûut ryâŋnîí</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He requested me, 'Don't
talk about this subject.'</p> | <p>kháw khǒo <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> phǒm
phûut ryâŋnîí</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He asked me not to talk
about this matter.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw bòok thékstîi wâa jàa
khàprót rew</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He said to the taxi
(driver), 'Don't
drive fast.'</p> | <p>kháw bòok <u>mâj</u> <u>hâj</u> thékstîi
khàp rôt rew</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He told the taxi
(driver) not to
drive fast.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. kháw bòok phǒm wâa jàa
sýy khǒon ráannán
He said to me, 'Don't
shop in that shop.'

kháw bòok mâj hâj phǒm
sýy khǒon ráannán
He told me not to
shop in that shop.

7. mǎo bòok phǒm wâa jàa
dýym námkhloon
The doctor said to
me, 'Don't drink
canal water.'

mǎo bòok mâj hâj phǒm
dýym námkhloon
The doctor told me
not to drink canal
water.

m) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw sàŋ mâj hâj phǒm
bòok khraj
He ordered me not
to tell anyone.

2. kháw mâj anújâat hâj phǒm
paj rya
He didn't permit me
to go by boat.

3. khruu bòok mâj hâj nákrían
phûut phaasǎa ankrít kan
The teacher told the
students not to speak
English.

Pattern 2

kháw mâj hâj phǒm bòok
khraj
He didn't let me
tell anyone.

kháw mâj hâj phǒm paj rya
He didn't let me go
by boat.

khruu mâj hâj nákrían phûut
phaasǎa ankrít kan
The teacher didn't
let the student
speak English.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. kháw khǎo mâj hâj phǎm phûut ryânní
He asked me not to talk about this matter.
- kháw mâj hâj phǎm phûut ryânní
He didn't let me talk about this matter.
5. kháw bòok mâj hâj phǎm maa
He told me not to come.
- kháw mâj hâj phǎm maa
He didn't let me come.

n) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- rót thǎksíi hǎa jâak
It's hard to find a taxi.
1. ráan nán
raan nán hǎa jâak
It's hard to find that shop.
2. bân kháw
bân kháw hǎa jâak
It's hard to find his house.
3. nánsýy lêm ní
nánsýy lêm ní hǎa jâak
It's hard to find this book.
4. khoncháj diidii
khoncháj diidii hǎa jâak
It's hard to find good servants.
5. bân diidii
bân diidii hǎa jâak
It's hard to find good houses.
6. nákrían kèn kèn jàanní
nákrían kèn kèn jàanní hǎa jâak
Smart students like this are hard to find.

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Response Drill (Respond negatively to the question.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jâak máj	mâj jâak
2. hăa jâak máj	hăa mâj jâak
3. tham jâak máj	tham mâj jâak
4. khĭan jâak máj	khĭan mâj jâak
5. òok sĭan jâak máj	òok sĭan mâj jâak
6. àan jâak máj	àan mâj jâak
7. khâwcaj jâak máj	khâwcaj mâj jâak
8. duu jâak máj	duu mâj jâak
9. phóp jâak máj	phóp mâj jâak
10. dâj jâak máj	dâj mâj jâak
11. cháj jâak máj	cháj mâj jâak
12. khàp jâak máj	khàp mâj jâak
13. rian jâak máj	rian mâj jâak
14. fan jâak máj	fan mâj jâak
15. khăaj jâak máj	khăaj mâj jâak
16. khít jâak máj	khít mâj jâak
17. thăam jâak máj	thăam mâj jâak
18. thaan jâak máj	thaan mâaj jâak
19. cam jâak máj	cam mâj jâak

p) Substitution Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khamthăam khĭon kháw, tòop	khamthăam khĭon kháw tòok jâak máj	tòop mâj jâak { ohá rook khráp
	Is his question hard to answer?	No, it isn't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| 2. bĕan khun, hĕa | bĕan khun hĕa jĕak mĕj
Is your house
hard to find? | hĕa mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 3. jaa nĕi, thaan | jaa nĕi thaan jĕak mĕj
Is this medicine
hard to take? | thaan mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 4. aahĕan thaj,
tham | aahĕan thaj tham
jĕak mĕj
Is it hard to
make Thai food? | tham mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 5. kham thaj,
sakòt | kham thaj sakòt
jĕak mĕj
Is it hard to
drive this car? | sakòt mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 6. ròt khaannĕi,
khàp | ròt khaannĕi khàp
jĕak mĕj
Is it hard to
drive this car? | khàp mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 7. pratuu baan
nĕi, pĕt | pratuu baannĕi pĕt
jĕak mĕj
Is this door
hard to shut? | pĕt mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |
| 8. kháw phūut
phaasĕa aᅇkrĕt,
faᅇ | kháw phūut phaasĕa
aᅇkrĕt faᅇ jĕak mĕj
Is his English hard
to understand? | faᅇ mĕj jĕak eha
No, it isn't. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

9. tua nánsǎy thaj, tua nánsǎy thaj khǎan khǎan mâj jâak ehá
khǎan jâak máj
Is it hard to
write Thai letters? No, it isn't.
10. phûujǎn thaj, phûujǎn thaj rúucàk rúucàk mâj jâak ehá
rúucàk jâak máj
Is it hard to
get to know
Thai women? No, it isn't.
11. nánsǎy lêm níi, nánsǎy lêm níi àan àan mâj jâak ehá
àan jâak máj
Is it hard to
read this book? No, it isn't.
12. naamsakun naamsakun khonthaj cam mâj jâak ehá
khonthaj, cam cam jâak máj
Are Thai names hard
to remember? No, they aren't.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,
khruu khuan ca tham janǎj
When a student speaks
incorrectly, what
should the teacher do?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> nákrían phûut phít,
khruu khuan ca kĕe
When a student speaks
incorrectly, the teacher
should correct (him).</p> |
| <p>2. <u>weelaa</u> khun mâj khâwcaj,
khun thǎam khraj
When you don't understand,
what do you do?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǒm mâj khâwcaj,
phǒm thǎam khruu
When I don't understand,
I ask the teacher.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>3. <u>weelaa</u> khun phóp khonthaj,
khun phûut phaasăa araj
kakháw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When you meet a Thai,
what language do you
speak to him?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǒm phóp khonthaj,
phǒm phûut phaasăa thaj
kakháw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When I meet a Thai,
I speak Thai to him..</p> |
| <p>4. <u>weelaa</u> khun mâj sabaaj,
khun paj hăa khraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When you are not well,
whom do you go to see?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǒm mâj sabaaj,
phǒm paj hăa mǔo</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When I'm not well, I
go to the doctor's.</p> |
| <p>5. <u>weelaa</u> khun jùt pháak,
khun tham araj bân</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When you take a break,
what do you do?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǒm jùt pháak,
phǒm khuj kàp phÿan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When I take a break,
I talk to friends.</p> |
| <p>6. <u>weelaa</u> khun tǔop khruu,
khun khít pen phaasăa
araj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When you answer the
teacher, what language
do you think in?</p> | <p><u>weelaa</u> phǒm tǔop khruu,
phǒm mák ca khít pen
phaasăa ankrít kǔon</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When I answer the
teacher, I usually
think first in English.</p> |

r) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. hăa mǔo	<p>weelaa khun mâj sabaaj, khun tham janraj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When you are not well, what do you do?</p>	<p>weelaa phǒm mâj sabaaj, phǒm mák ca paj <u>hăa mǔo</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">When I'm not well, I usually go to the doctor's.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---------------|--|---|
| 2. māj | weelaa kháw phûut rew
rew khun khâwcaj māj
When he speaks
fast, do you
understand. | weelaa kháw phûut rew
rew, phǒm <u>māj</u> khâwcaj
When he speaks
fast, I don't
understand. |
| 3. àan nánsǎy | weelaa khun wâan,
khun tham araj
When you are free,
what do you do? | weelaa phǒm wâan,
phǒm <u>àan nánsǎy</u>
When I'm not
busy, I read. |
| 4. duu nánsǎy | weelaa khun ca sòop,
khun khuan tham araj
When you are going
to have a test,
what would you do? | weelaa phǒm ca sòop
phǒm khuan <u>duu nánsǎy</u>
When I'm going to
have a test, I
should study. |
| 5. aṅkrít | weelaa khun tòop khruu,
khun khít pen phaasǎa
araj
When you answer
the teacher, what
language do you
think in? | weelaa phǒm tòop khruu,
phǒm khít pen phaasǎa
aṅkrít
When I answer the
teacher, I think
in English. |
| 6. kĕe | weelaa khun phûut phít,
khruu khuan ca tham
jaṅṅaj
When you speak
incorrectly,
what should the
teacher do? | weelaa phǒm phûut phít,
khruu khuan ca <u>kĕe</u>
When I speak
incorrectly,
the teacher
should correct me. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------|---|---|
| 7. | thăam khruu | weelaa khun mâj khâwcaj,
khun tham janŋaj
When you don't
understand, what
do you do? | weelaa phǒm mâj khâwcaj,
phǒm <u>thăam khruu</u>
When I don't
understand, I
ask the teacher. |
| 8. | paj thaan
kaafɛɛ | weelaa khun jùt phák
khun tham araj
When you take a
break, what do
you do? | weelaa phǒm jùt phák,
phǒm <u>paj thaan kaafɛɛ</u>
When I take a
break I go drink
coffee. |
| 9. | paj chaaj
thalee | weelaa aakàat rón,
khon ameerikan sùn
mâak chôp paj thîaw
thîinǎj
When the weather's
hot, where do most
Americans like to
go on vacations? | weelaa aakàat rón,
khon ameerikan sùn
mâak chôp <u>paj
chaajthalee</u>
When the weather's
hot, most Americans
like to go to the
seashore. |

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | <u>toon thîi</u> khun pen dèk, khun
rian nánsŷy thîinǎj
When you were a child,
where did you go to
school? | <u>toon thîi</u> phǒm pen dèk, phǒm
rian nánsŷy thîi tàncaŋwàt
When I was a child,
I studied in the
provinces (outside
Bangkok). |

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. toon thîi kháw maa háa khun,
khun paj nǎj

When he came to see
you, where were you
gone?

- toon thîi kháw maa háa phǒm,
phǒm paj sýy khǒn khâanǎok

When he came to see
me, I had gone out
shopping.

3. toon thîi khun jùu thîi
prathâet wíatnaam, khun
mii tamnēsŋ araj

When you were stationed
in Vietnam, what was
your position (rank)?

- toon thîi phǒm jùu thîi
prathâet wíatnaam, phǒm
pen roonj koŋsŋn

When I was stationed
in Vietnam, I was
consul.

4. toon thîi khun rēem rian
phaasǎa thaj màj màj, khun
khít wâa phaasǎa thaj jâak
máj

When you had just
begun to study Thai,
did you think it was
hard?

- toon thîi phǒm rēem rian
phaasǎathaj màj, phǒm khít
wâa phaasǎathaj jâak mâak

When I first began
to study Thai, I
thought it was very
hard.

5. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi
ameerikaa, khun rúucàk kháw
lésw rýjan

Did you meet him
while you were in
America?

- toon thîi phǒm jan jùu thîi
ameerikaa, phǒm jan màj
rúucàk kháw

I didn't know him
when I was in
America.

6. toon thîi khun jan jùu thîi
ameerikaa, khun rian phaasǎa
thaj thîinǎj

When you were in America,
where did you study Thai.

- toon thîi phǒm jan jùu thîi
ameerikaa, phǒm rian phaasǎa
thaj thîi roonrian sǒn phaasǎa

When I was in America,
I studied Thai at a
language school.

THAI BASIC COURSE

t) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. raw rian jùu thîi wòochintân	khun rúucàk kháw mýaraj When were you acquainted with him?	phǒm rúucàk kháw toon thîi <u>raw rian jùu thîi</u> <u>wòochintân</u> I knew him when we were studying in Washington.
2. khun òok paj khâan nòok	kháw maa mýaraj When did he come?	kháw maa toon thîi <u>òok paj khâan nòok</u> He came as you were leaving.
3. tɛɛŋŋaan	khun dâj khǒonkhwǎn lǎaj jàan mýaraj When did you get a lot of gifts?	phǒm dâj khǒonkhwǎn lǎaj jàan toon thîi phǒm <u>tɛɛŋŋaan</u> I got a lot of presents when I married.
4. raw mâj jùu	mii khon maa hǎa mýaraj When did people come to see (us)?	mii khon maa hǎa toon thîi <u>raw mâj jùu</u> People came to see us while we were not in.
5. phýan phǒm	toon thîi khun mâj sabaaj, khraj tham aahǎan hâj khun Who cooked for you while you were sick?	<u>phýan phǒm</u> tham aahǎan hâj toon thîi phǒm mâj sabaaj My friend cooked for me while I was sick.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. thîi lópburii	toon sǎnkhraam lôok khrán thîi 2, khun jùu thîinǎj	phǒm jùu <u>thîi lópburii</u> toon sǎnkhraam lôok khrán thîi sǎn
	Where were you living during World War II?	I was living in Lopburi during World War II.

u) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. toon thîi phǒm rian phaasǎa thaj jùu thîi éf-és-aj,
weelaa phǒm phûut phít, khon thaj mák ca kĕe hǎj
When I was studying Thai at the FSI, when
(ever) I made a mistake, a Thai usually
corrected it.
2. toon thîi raw jan ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa
paj sýy aahǎan, phǒm paj chûaj phanrajaa samǎe
When we were still living in America, when
(ever) my wife went to buy food, I always
helped her.
3. toon thîi raw jùu naj ameerikaa, weelaa phanrajaa
phǒm mâj wǎan, phǒm chûaj tham aahǎan cháaw hǎj khǎw
When we were living in America, when (ever)
my wife was busy, I made breakfast for her.
4. toon thîi phǒm thamnaan krasuan tàan prathĕet màj màj
weelaa khǎw cheen phǒm paj naanlián, phǒm paj samǎe
When I had just begun working at the Foreign
Ministry, when (ever) they invited me to a
party, I always went.

THAI BASIC COURSE

v) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw mâj dâj páj khondiaw khrôpkhrua khôongkháw
paj duâj

He didn't go alone. His family went too.

2. wanní phôm ca paj thúra thîi thanaakhaan lé ca
paj hăa phyan thîinân duâj

Today I'm going to the bank on business and
I will see a friend there also.

3. kháw pen khon suăj lé dii duâj

She is a beautiful person and good too.

4. phôm mâj dâj rian phûut thâwnán tè rian àan lé
khyan duâj

I didn't just learn to speak but to read
and write also.

5. kháw hâj théksiî paj sòn lé hâj khooj kháw duâj

He had the taxi pick him up and had it
wait for him too.

6. kháw pen khâarâatchakaan lé nákkaanmyan duâj

He's a government employee and a politician too.

THAI BASIC COURSE

27.3 EXERCISES

- a) Student A asks Student B to call a taxi for him. They discuss destination, where he will stop on the way, how long the driver will have to wait, what the cost will be, and whether the cost is too high or not. When Student B points out that it will be hard to get a taxi at that particular time, Student A says he will call one himself.

NOTE: Use the Basic Dialog as a guide only.

- b) Student A asks Student B whether he does any of the following things for himself or whether he has someone do them for him; and if so, who does them for him.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. drive a car | 5. call taxis |
| 2. go shopping | 6. make telephone calls |
| 3. bargain | 7. other activities |
| 4. buy food or other things | |

- c) Student A asks Student B what he told (ask, let, ordered, requested, wanted) someone to do and if he did it. Use the following exchange as a model:

A: khun bòok (kh๑๐, anújâat, sàŋ) hâj kháw (phŷan khun, etc.) tham araj

B: phòm bòok (kh๑๐, etc.) hâj kháw kh๑๑j jùu thŷini
(thaan jaa, thoo maa hăa khun, etc.)

A: (kháw) kh๑๑j (thaan, etc.) rýplàaw khráp

B: plàaw khráp or khráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

27.4 VOCABULARY

anujâat	permit
... (hâj)	
athíbaaj	explain
een	by himself, herself, themselves, etc., without outside help of influence.
òok siǎn	to pronounce, to voice
baan	classifier for <u>door</u>
chán	I, me. Man speaking to persons of inferior status. Women use it more often with persons of inferior social status, to strangers, acquaintances, friends and intimates.
chabàp	classifier for letter or newspaper
duâj	too, also
hâj	for the benefit or in place of someone else
jùt	to stop
jùt pháak	to take a break
kêe	to correct
kæen paj	excessively
khâadoojsaan	fare
khamthǎam (khôo)	question
khít	to figure or reckon, to think
khon khàprót	chauffeur, driver
khǎo	to request
lòok	world
mâj khôoj (ca)	hardly, rather
mák ca	usually, likely to
nákkaanmyan (khon)	a politician
phák phòn	to rest

THAI BASIC COURSE

phɛɛŋ	to be expensive
phìt	to be incorrect, a mistake
raakhaa	price
sakòt	to spell (words)
sàŋ (hâj)	to order
sǎŋkhraam	war
sòɔp	to test, be tested
taam	to follow, after, along
tamnɛɛŋ	position (rank)
tòɔ (raakhaa)	to bargain
tòɔ (thoorasàp)	to make a phone call

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

28.0 BASIC DIALOG: Conversation With a Taxi Driver

David:	théksíi.	Taxi!
khon khàp théksíi:	paj nǎj khráp	Where to?
(Taxi driver)		
David:	paj pratunám, aw thâwràj	How much to Pratnam?
khon khàp:	sìp sǒn bàat khráp	Twelve baht.
David:	cèt bàat, dâj máj	How about seven?
	klâj khêení eej	It's right near here.
khon khàp:	mâj wǎj rǒkhráp	Can't do it.
	thěwnán rót tìt	The traffic's heavy over there.
David:	nán, pèet bàat, paj máj	Then, can you do it for eight?
	khəej paj dâj pèet bàat	I've been for eight (before).
khon khàp:	kâaw bàat kôléewkan, paj máj	Let's say nine baht. Do you want to go?
David:	paj kô paj	If we're going, let's go.
	chúaj khàp cháa cháa	Please drive slowly.
	nòoj nakhráp	

THAI BASIC COURSE

(théksîi khàp rew mâak. (The taxi goes very fast,
khun deewít lœj phûut wâa '...') so David says, '....')

David: khun khráp, jàa khàp Say, don't drive so fast.
rew nák sikhráp

karunaa khàp cháa Could you please slow
cháa nòoj, dâj máj down a little?
khráp

28.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) In affirmative requests stative verbs (di, cháa, etc.) usually occur in reduplicated form when used as modifiers of other verbs.

phûut cháa cháa nòoj nakhráp 'Speak a little slower.'

nòoj 'a little' usually occurs after the stative verb and serves to soften the request.

In negative requests the stative verb is not usually reduplicated.

jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp 'Don't speak so fast.'

nák 'so, so much' may occur after the stative verb.

- b) In the construction jùu klâj klâj khêe nîi eej, eej is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance.

- c) ròk is also pronounced ròk, ròok, ròk, rò, when followed by khráp or khâ or ə when followed by há. It is used with statements of negation, or contradiction, or when correcting a misapprehension. It makes a statement milder or less abrupt.

mâj wăj ròkhráp 'I can't do it.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) ná or na with kháp at the end of a sentence indicates that a comment is being made and attention is being called to it. No response to it is necessary, but if one is made, it is kháp.

A: khòokkhun mâak ná 'Thanks very much.'
B: kháp (I heard you.)

Request = kháp diidii { ná 'Drive well.'
 { nakhráp

- e) Notice the difference in usage between sí, si, and sî, sí is used to request some one to do something. If it is to be done for the speaker, nòj or thii may be used to soften the request.

kháp cháacháa nòj sí (or sikhráp) 'Slow down a bit.'

If the speaker is urging someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request, or urging someone to do something that obviously needs doing, he may use sî.

kháp cháacháa (nòj) sî 'Slow down (as I asked you to)'

- f) kô léew kan is a phrase which is used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it. English equivalents vary from example to example:

kâaw bàat kô léew kan 'Let's say nine baht.'

waanníi khun khàprót kô 'How about you driving today!?'
léew kan

THAI BASIC COURSE

28.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	paj <u>pratuunám</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Pratunam?
1. sǐijêek râatprasǎn	paj <u>sǐijêek râatprasǎn</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Ratprasong Corner?
2. roonǎn khiŋ	paj <u>roonǎn khiŋ</u> , aw thâwràj How much to King's Cinema?
3. phii éks	paj <u>phiiéks</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the P. X.?
4. thammasàat	paj <u>thammasàat</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Thammasart (University)?
5. juusít, thanǎn sǎathoontâj	paj <u>juusít thanǎn sǎathoontâj</u> , aw thâwràj How much to USIS on South Sathorn?
6. roonphajaabaan mítchân	paj <u>roonphajaabaan mítchân</u> , aw thâwràj How much to the Mission Hospital?
7. roonrɛɛm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaaj	paj <u>roonrɛɛm khéppitôn saphaan khwaaaj</u> , aw thâwràj
8. pathumwan	paj <u>pathumwan</u> , aw thâwràj How much to Patoomwan Corner?

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. phûut , cháa	phûut <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little slower.
2. khàp , cháa	khàp <u>cháacháa</u> nòoj nakhráp Drive a little slower.
3. klàp maa , rew	klàp maa <u>rewrew</u> nòoj nakhráp Come back a little sooner.
4. thaان , mâak	thaان <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Eat a little more.
5. jùu , naan	jùu <u>naannaan</u> nòoj nakhráp Stay a while longer.
6. tham (aahǎan), mâak	tham <u>mâakmâak</u> nòoj nakhráp Do a bit more.
7. phûut , dan	phûut <u>dandan</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little louder.
8. phûut kàp kháw , dii	phûut kàp kháw <u>dii dii</u> nòoj nakhráp Speak a little better with him.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp
Don't drive so fast.
2. jàa phûut rew nák nakhráp
Don't speak so fast.
3. jàa phûut khôj nák nakhráp
Don't speak so softly.
4. jaà dœen cháa nák nakhráp
Don't walk so slowly.
5. jàa maa cháa nák nakhráp
Don't come so late.
6. jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp
Don't come so late (in the morning).
7. jàa paj naan nák nakhráp
Don't be gone for so long.

e) Transformation Drill

- | <u>Affirmative</u> | <u>Negative</u> |
|--|--|
| 1. khàp cháacháa nòoj nakhráp
Drive a little slower. | jàa khàp rew nák nakhráp
Don't drive so fast. |
| 2. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp
Come a little earlier. | jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp
Don't come so late. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. paj rewrew nòoj nakhráp
Go a little faster. | jàa paj cháa nák nakhráp
Don't go so slow. |
| 4. phûut khôjkhôj nòoj nakhráp
Speak a little softer. | jàa phûut daŋ nák nakhráp
Don't speak so loud. |
| 5. klàp rewrew nòoj nakhráp
Come back a little sooner. | jàa klàp cháa nák nakhráp
Don't come back so late. |
| 6. maa cháawcháaw nòoj nakhráp
Come a little earlier. | jàa maa sǎaj nák nakhráp
Don't come so late. |

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. sǎaj caŋ | } ná
} nahá | Very pretty, isn't it? |
| 2. sǎaj | } ná
} nahá | Pretty, isn't it? |
| 3. kèŋ caŋ | } ná
} nahá | Very expert, isn't it? |
| 4. dii | } ná
} nahá | Good, isn't it? |
| 5. cháat caŋ | } ná
} nahá | Very clear (distinct), isn't it? |
| 6. phæŋ | } ná
} nahá | Expensive, isn't it? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | | |
|-----|----------|---|---------|-------------------------------------|
| 7. | naan caŋ | } | ná | |
| | | | nahá | A very long time, isn't it? |
| 8. | cháa caŋ | } | ná | |
| | | | nahá | Very slow, isn't it? |
| 9. | rew caŋ | } | ná | |
| | | | nakhráp | Very fast (quick), isn't it? |
| 10. | klaj caŋ | } | ná | |
| | | | nahá | Very far, isn't it? |
| 11. | mâak | } | ná | |
| | | | nahá | (It's) a lot, isn't it? |
| 12. | mâak caŋ | | ná | |
| | | | nahá | (It's) a very great deal, isn't it? |

g) Transformation Drill

From the situation given in Column 1, one student makes a comment (as a reaction to the situation) to another student.

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Comment</u>
1. faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj cháat mâak That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly.	faràŋ khonnán phûut phaasǎa thaj cháat caŋ ná That Westerner speaks Thai very distinctly, doesn't he?
2. kháw pen khon nâabyà He's a bore.	kháw pen khon nâabyà ná He's a bore, isn't he?

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. phûujǐŋ khonní sǔaj mâak
That woman is very
pretty. | phûujǐŋ khonní sǔaj caŋ ná
That woman is very
pretty, isn't she? |
| 4. phaasǎa thaj nǐi jâak
Thai is hard. | phaasǎa thaj nǐi jâak ná
Thai is hard, isn't it? |
| 5. phyân khun pen khon sanùk
Your friend is an
amusing person. | phyân khun pen khon sanùk ná
Your friend is an
amusing person,
isn't he? |
| 6. phûuchaaj khonnán lèn thennít
kèn mâak
That fellow plays
tennis very well. | phûuchaaj khonnán lèn thennít
kèn caŋ ná
That fellow plays
tennis very well,
doesn't he? |
| 7. mǔo khonnán dii mâak
That doctor is very
good. | mǔo khonnán dii caŋ ná
That doctor is very
good, isn't he? |
| 8. bâan khun praphâat jùu
klaj mâak
Mr. Prapas' house is
very far. | bâan khun praphâat jùu klaj
caŋ
Mr. Prapas' house is
very far, isn't it? |
| 9. wanníi aakàat dii
Today the weather's
fine. | wanníi aakàat dii ná
Today the weather's
fine, isn't it? |
| 10. thǐnǐi khǒŋ phæŋ mâak
Here things are
very expensive. | thǐnǐi khǒŋ phæŋ caŋ ná
Here things are
very expensive,
aren't they? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

11. thěwníi rót tít mâak

The traffic is very
heavy in this section.

thěwníi rót tít caṅ ná

The traffic is very heavy
in this section, isn't it?

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Slow down a bit.

2. maa cháacháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a little earlier.

3. phûut dandaj nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.

4. paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp

Go a little faster.

5. duu nâṅsŷy mâakmâak nòoj sikhráp

Study a little more.

i) Transformation Drill

Situation

(khun khàp rót rew)

(khun maa sǎaj thúkwan)

(khun phûut khôj mâak)

Request

khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp

Drive a little slower.

maa cháawcháaw nòoj sikhráp

Come a bit earlier.

phûut dandaj nòoj sikhráp

Speak a little louder.

THAI BASIC COURSE

(khun paj cháa mâak)

paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp
Go a little earlier.

(khun thamnaan cháa)

tham rewrew nòoj sikhráp
Work a little faster.

(khun thaan nòoj)

thaan mâak mâak nòoj sikhráp
Eat a little more.

(khun phûut mâj dii)

phûut dii dii nòoj sikhráp
Speak a little better.

j) Transformation Drill

Affirmative Request

1. khàp cháacháa nòoj sikhráp
Drive slower.
2. maa cháawcháaw nòoj sikhráp
Come earlier.
3. paj rewrew nòoj sikhráp
Go sooner.
4. khuj kan khôj khôj nòoj sikhráp
Converse more quietly.
5. thamnaan rewrew nòoj sikhráp
Work faster.

Negative Request

- jàa khàp rew nák sikhráp
Don't drive so fast.
- jàa maa sǎaj nák sikhráp
Don't come so late.
- jàa paj cháa nák sikhráp
Don't go so late.
- jàa khuj kan dan nák sikhráp
Don't converse in such
loud voices.
- jàa tham cháa nák sikhráp
Don't work so slowly.

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Transformation Drill

Change Pattern 1 to 2 with na, which has the meaning: 'a reminder to...!'; change Pattern 1 to 3 with si, which has the meaning 'you are urged to...!'.

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. paj	paj nakhráp	paj sikhráp
2. maa	maa nakhráp	maa sikhráp
3. phûut	phûut nakhráp	phûut sikhráp
4. tòop	tòop nakhráp	tòop sikhráp
5. paj rewrew	paj rewrew nakhráp	paj rewrew sikhráp
6. phûut phaasăathaj	phûut phaasăathaj nakhráp	phûut phaasăathaj sikhráp
7. jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít	jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít nakhráp	jàa phûut phaasăa aᅇkrít sikhráp

28.3 EXERCISES (The instructor reads the sentences describing the situation and a student makes an appropriate response.)

1. khun kamləŋ ca khÿn théksŕi . khun māj jàak hāj théksŕi kàp rót rew . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
2. khun kamləŋ nāŋ théksŕi . khonkhàp khàp rew māk . khun māj jàak hāj kháw khàp rew. khun phûut wāa '.....'.
3. nákrían phûut sŕəŋ khŕj kəən paj. khun jàak hāj kháw phûut daŋdaŋ . khun phûut wāa '.....'.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. phrûṅṅnīi khun ca paj thīaw kàp phyân tēs cháaw . kháw ca tōṅ maa phóp khun thīi bāan . khun jàak hâj kháw maa cháaw cháaw . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
5. khun cim chuan phyân khuj samǎe. khun mâj jàak hâj khun cim chuan phyân khuj . khun phûut wāa '.....'.
6. khun coo hěn phûujǐṅ khon nỳṅ . kháw suǎj mâak . khun coo phûut kàp phyân wāa '.....'.
7. khun coon khít wāa wannīi aakàat dii mâak . khun coon phûut kàp phyân wāa '.....'.
8. khruu jàak hâj nákrīan phûut phaasǎa thaj . khruu phûut wāa '.....'.
9. nákrīan kamlan phûut phaasǎa aṅkrít kan . khruu jàak hâj kháw phûut phaasǎa thaj kan . khruu phûut wāa '.....'.

28.4 VOCABULARY

anúsǎawariī (hèn)	monument
eeṅ	is used to emphasize the shortness of the distance (in this lesson).
coo	Joe
daṅ	loud
khēs { níi nán	up to (such and such a point) that near (far), to that extent
khéppitôn	Capitol, name of a hotel in Bangkok
khôj	softly, low (of sound)

THAI BASIC COURSE

kô léew kan	used in affirmative sentences to indicate preference for a particular course of action and to urge another to agree to it.
mâj wǎj	can't do it, unable to, is incapable of (because of lack of physical strength of energy)
mítchân	Mission, name of a hospital in Bangkok
nák	so, so much
pathumwan	a section in Bangkok
prachaathíppataj	freedom and also the name of a monument in Bangkok
roonǎn khin	King's Cinema
rót tít	the traffic's heavy
tít	to get stuck (to, in), to connect, to stick (to), to attach (to)
saphaan khwaaj	Buffalo Bridge, name of the section in Bangkok on Phaholyothin Road
si, sí, sí	to request someone to do something to urge someone to do something that he has failed to do on the first request or obviously needs doing
thěwnán	over there, that area
thii	may be used in the place of <u>nòoj</u> to soften the request if it is to be done for the speaker.

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON TWENTY-NINE

29.0 BASIC DIALOG: paj hăa araj thaan khâanŋōk
'Going Out to Eat.'

- A: phǒm ca paj hăa araj thaan khâanŋōk . paj dūajkan máj
I'm going to go out for something to eat. Want to go along?
- B: paj
khun chuan khraj paj dūaj rýplàaw
Yes.
Did you ask anybody(else) to go along?
- A: mâj dâj chuan khraj phró
mâj mi khraj jùu
No, I didn't invite anybody because nobody was in.
- B: khun sǒmsŷi lâ
How about Somsri?
- A: mâj maa
pùaj
She didn't come.
She's sick.
- B: nán, thaان sèt léew
thâa raw mi weelaa phoo
paj jŷam kháw sàk nòoj
Then, after we have eaten, if we have time, let's go visit her for a while,
- A: dii máj
O.K.?
- B: awsi khráp
nán, raw rŷip paj kan thè
dŷaw ca klàp maa mâj than
Good idea!
Then let's hurry or we won't get back on time.

THAI BASIC COURSE

29.1 NOTES ON THE DIALOG AND OTHER NOTES

a) aw máj means 'Will you accept?' or 'Is it acceptable?' It is often used after sentences in which a proposal is made. The response to it is mâj aw khráp 'I won't (accept it)' or 'It isn't (acceptable)', or awsi khráp 'O.K.' or 'I'll accept (it)'. aw máj is similar in usage and meaning to dii máj in this particular sense.

b) As indicated in 11.16, khraj and araj are not always used as question words. They may also be used as indefinite pronouns:

(1) in questions with máj, rÿy, or rÿplàaw, or

(2) as the object complement of certain verbs in affirmative and negative sentences, as below:

<u>mii khraj maa bâan máj</u>	'Is anyone coming.'
<u>mâj mii khraj maa</u>	'Nobody's coming.'
<u>khraj khraj kô bòok wâa</u>	'Everybody says Bangkok's
<u>krunthêep mâj sǔaj</u>	not pretty.'

Although both khraj and khon occur with indefinite meaning as object complements of the verb mii, they can not be used interchangeably. The difference in usage is illustrated below:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Utterance</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
1. Mr. <u>A</u> had a house for sale, so he put an ad in the paper with his telephone number.	<u>A</u> to his secretary: <u>mii khon thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rÿplàaw</u>	Did I get any calls (about that ad)?
2. Mr. <u>A</u> is expecting a call from some friends about a trip to Pataya.	<u>A</u> to his wife: <u>mii khraj thoo maa</u> <u>bâan rÿplàaw</u>	Did anyone (of my friends) call?

THAI BASIC COURSE

The usage in negative sentence is illustrated below:

1. There are several newly built houses on a street. mâj mii khon jùu 'Nobody's living in those houses.'
2. Some one knocks on a door but gets no response. mâj mii khraj jùu 'Nobody's home.'

29.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sèt, and than are called completive verbs. They occur in the structure SENTENCE + COMPLETIVE VERB.

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamnaan sèt léew 'He has finished working.'

kháw jan tham mâj sèt 'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. than means 'to accomplish something in time, to have time to', or 'to catch up to.'

phǒm maa roonrian mâj than 'I didn't come to school on time'.

3. After action verbs (paj, thaan, etc.) the question word mâj indicates that a voluntary choice is possible, hence it is used in invitations, suggestions, etc. (See 9.1)

raw paj sýy khǒn. 'We are going shopping.'

paj dûajkan mâj 'Want to go along?'

Responses to questions of this type may be:

Affirmative: paj sihá 'I would like to'
(ready acceptance)

THAI BASIC COURSE

Negative: mâj əhá 'Thanks, no.'
khòpkhun (polite refusal)

b) rýplàaw is used with action verbs to indicate 'past time'.

pa.j rýplàaw 'Did you go?'

pa.j khráp 'I did.'

There are two possible negative responses to this type of question: mâj dâj (pa.j) and mâj (pa.j). Choice of the mâj dâj form of the negative indicates that circumstances prevented the speaker from doing something.

Choice of the mâj form indicates that the speaker did not do something out of choice. Observe the examples below:

mýawaanní khun pa.j ñaanlían rýplàaw

'Did you go to the party yesterday?'

phǒm mâ.j dâ.j pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâ.j wâan)

'I didn't go (because I was busy.)'

phǒm mâ.j pa.j khráp (phró phǒm mâ.j jàak pa.j).

'I didn't go (because I didn't want to go.)'

c) thè (thə, thət) 'why not, let's' is a sentence particle. It is used in making mild suggestions. When joint activity is called for, it occurs after kan.

raw pa.j kin khâaw kan thèkhráp 'Let's go eat.'

d) dýaw may occur as a sentence connective, with the meaning 'or else, otherwise'. In the examples below it is used to indicate that one event follows as the logical consequence of another.

raw rîip pa.j kan thèkhráp, dýaw ca klàp maa mâ.j than

'Let's hurry; otherwise, we won't get back in time.'

jàa cháa nák nakhráp, dýaw ñaan ca mâ.j sèt

'Don't be so slow, or else the work won't be finished.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

29.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

(phỏm) ca paj hǎa ara.j thaan, paj duâjkan máj khráp

I'm going to get something to eat. Want to come along?

1. thaان khâaw ca paj thaan khâaw. paj duâjkan máj khráp
I'm going to eat. Want to come along?
2. sýy khǒon ca paj sýy khǒon. pâj duâjkan máj khráp
I'm going to eat. Want to come along?
shopping?
3. sòn còtmǎaj ca paj sòn còtmǎaj. paj dūajkan máj khráp
I'm going to mail a letter. Want to come
along?
4. thaان kaafɛɛ ca paj thaan kaafɛɛ paj duâjkan máj khráp
I'm going to drink coffee. Want to come
along.
5. duu nǎn ca paj duu nǎn paj duâjkan máj khráp
I'm going to a movie. Want to come along?

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>		
		<u>No</u>	<u>Yes</u>	
			(Reluctant acceptance)	(Willing acceptance)
1.	ca paj hǎa araj thaان paj duâjkan máj	mâj ehá khòopkhun	paj kô paj paj kô paj	paj sihá paj sihá
2.	paj thaان kaafæ kan máj	mâj ehá khòopkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
3.	paj duu nǎŋ kan máj	mâj ehá khòopkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá
4.	paj máj	mâj ehá khòopkhun	paj kô paj	paj sihá

c) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaان máj Do you want to eat?	khòopkhun { khráp } há? Yes, thank you.
2. No	thaان máj Do you want to eat?	mâj ehá, khòopkhun No, thank you.
3. Yes	dÿym máj Do you want something to drink?	khòopkhun há Yes, thank you.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|-----|--------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| 4. | No. | kaafɛɛ máj
Do you want some coffee? | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun
No, thank you. |
| 5. | No. | aw máj
Would you $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{like some?} \\ \text{accept any offer?} \end{array} \right.$ | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun
No, thank you. |
| 6. | Yes
(reluctant) | paj máj
Would you like to go? | paj kô paj
Well, O.K. |
| 7. | Yes. | duu máj
Do you want to look? | khòɔpkhun há
Yes, thank you. |
| 8. | No. | aàn máj
Do you want to read (it)? | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun
No, thank you. |
| 9. | No. | thaan dŭajkan máj
Would you like to eat together? | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun
No, thank you. |
| 10. | No. | pâj dŭajkan máj
Do you want to go along? | mâj ɛhá, khòɔpkhun
No, thank you. |

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	sýy Yes.
2. No.	sýy máj Want to buy it?	mâj sýy No.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 3. Yes | duu máj
Want to look? | duu
Yes. |
| 4. No | aw máj
Would you like some?
Will you accept my offer? | mâj aw
No. |
| 5. No | maa máj
Would you like to come? | mâj maa
No. |
| 6. Yes | paj máj
Would you like to go? | paj
Yes. |
| 7. Yes
(reluctant) | khǎaj máj
Would you like to sell (it)? | khǎaj kô khǎaj
Well, maybe. |
| 8. No | rót khanní ca khǎaj máj
Will you sell this car? | mâj khǎaj
No. |
| 9. No | phrûnní ca paj ñaan máj
Are you going to the affair
tomorrow? | mâj paj
No. |
| 10. Yes | kháw ca háj khun paj
tàncañwát, aw máj
They want you to go to the
provinces, are you going? | aw
Yes. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u> (Past action)	<u>Response</u>
1. Yes	thaan rýplàaw Did you eat?	thaan Yes, I did.
2. No	dýym rýplàaw Did you have anything	mâj dâj dýym No, I didn't.
3. No	paj rýplàaw Did you go?	mâj dâj paj No, I didn't.
4. Yes	sýy rýplàaw Did you buy (it)?	sýy Yes, I did.
5. No	khǎaj rýplàaw Did you sell (it)?	mâj dâj khǎaj No, I didn't.
6. No	duu rýplàaw Did you look (at it)?	mâj dâj duu No, I didn't.
7. Yes	àan rýplàaw Did you read (it)?	àan Yes, I did.
8. No	aw rýplàaw Did you take it?	mâj dâj aw No, I didn't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. m̄yawaann̄i, kháw paj naanl̄ian r̄yplàaw khráp Did he go to the party yesterday?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>jàak</u> paj). He didn't go because he didn't want to.
2. m̄yawaann̄i, khun paj naanl̄ian r̄yplàaw khráp Did you go to the party yesterday?	phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>paj</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>w̄an</u> I didn't go because I was busy.
3. m̄yakhyynn̄i, ph̄yan khun thaان aah̄an thaj r̄yplàaw. Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp (phró kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>ch̄oap</u> aah̄an thaj) He didn't because he doesn't like Thai food.
4. m̄yakhyynn̄i, ph̄yan khun thaان aah̄an thaj r̄yplàaw Did your friend eat Thai food last night?	kháw <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>thaan</u> khráp phró aah̄an mòt He didn't because it was all eaten up.
5. khun s̄y n̄ans̄y r̄yplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>d̄aj</u> <u>s̄y</u> khráp phró <u>m̄aj</u> <u>mi</u> <u>n̄en</u> I didn't because I didn't have any money.
6. khun s̄y n̄ans̄y r̄yplàaw khráp Did you buy the book?	phǒm khít w̄a phǒm ca <u>m̄aj</u> <u>s̄y</u> khráp phró phǒm <u>m̄aj</u> <u>ch̄oap</u> n̄ans̄y l̄em n̄i I thought I wouldn't buy it because I didn't like this book.

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. thŷn weelaa pháak léew, pháak thèkhráp
It's break time. Take a break.
2. khâaṅnaj mii kâwîi, (raw) paj nân thîinân kan thèkhráp
There are chairs inside. Let's go sit there.
3. thîaṅ léew, paj thaan khâaw kan thèkhráp
It's noon already. Let's go eat.
4. paj kan thèkhráp
Let's go.
5. wannîi raw phûut phaasăa thaj kan thèkhráp
Today let's speak Thai.
6. kháw cháa kœen paj. raw thaan kan thèkhráp
He's too late. Let's go ahead and eat.

h) Transformation Drill (Reword the sentences using chuan.)

1. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wansăwnîi paj
phátthajaa kan máj khráp'
He said to me, 'Would you like to go
to Pataya (with us) next Saturday?'
Student: kháw chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa.
He invited me to go to Pataya.
2. Teacher: kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wannîi raw phûut
phaasăa thaj kan thè'
He said to me, 'Let's speak Thai today.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

Student: kháw chuan phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj

He invited me to speak Thai (with him).

1. khun cǎon phûut kàp phǒm 'jenníi raw paj hǎa
aahǎan thaj thaan kan máj khráp
2. phýan khun phûut kàp phǒm 'phrýnníi , paj lén
thennít kan máj khráp
3. mýawaanníi phanrajaa phǒm phûut kàp phǒm 'paj duu
nǎŋ kan thè (raw paj duu nǎŋ kan)
4. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phrûnníi kháw ca mi kaanbanjaaj
rýan myan thaj . paj fan dũajkan máj khráp'
5. kháw phûut kàp phǒm wǎa dýym kaafɛɛ máj khráp
6. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'wanníi , thaan khǎaw kàp phǒm
na khráp
7. kháw phûut kàp phǒm 'phǒm jàak hǎj khun paj thamŋaan
kàp phǒm

i) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. phǒm

phǒm thamŋaan sèt léɛw

I've finished working.

2. raw

raw thamŋaan sèt léɛw

We've finished working.

THAI BASIC COURSE

14. sòn còtmǎaj phǒm sòn còtmǎaj sèt lésw
I've finished mailing the letter.
15. tham thúra phǒm tham thúra sèt lésw
I've finished my business.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (sèt as main verb.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. naan khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your work finished?	naan khǒn phǒm sèt lésw khráp My work is finished.
2. naan khǒn phyan khun sèt máj khráp Is your friend's work finished?	naan khǒn phyan phǒm jan mâj sèt khráp My friend's work isn't finished.
3. rūup khǒn khun sèt máj khráp Is your picture finished?	rūup khǒn phǒm sèt lésw khráp My picture is finished.
4. bāan khǒn khun sèt lésw rýjan khráp Is your house finished yet?	bāan khǒn phǒm jan mâj sèt khráp My house isn't finished yet.
5. nánsýy khǒn khun sèt lésw rýjan khráp Is your book finished yet?	nánsýy khǒn phǒm sèt lésw khráp My book is finished already.

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Transformation Drill (Listen to the affirmative sentence and add a negative sentence with tè kháw jaŋ mâj sèt.)

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>phǒm</u> thamŋaan sèt lésw
I've finished working. | tè <u>kháw</u> jaŋ tham <u>mâj</u> sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 2. <u>phǒm</u> thaan khâaw sèt lésw
I've finished eating | tè kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 3. <u>phǒm</u> rian náŋsŷy sèt lésw
I've finished studying | tè kháw jaŋ rian mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 4. <u>phǒm</u> phûut thoorasàp sèt lésw
I've finished telephoning | tè kháw phûut mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 5. <u>phǒm</u> lèn thennis sèt lésw
I've finished playing tennis | tè kháw jaŋ lèn mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 6. <u>phǒm</u> sòop sèt lésw
I've finished my exams | tè kháw jaŋ sòop mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 7. <u>phǒm</u> sŷy khǒŋ sèt lésw
I've finished shopping | tè kháw jaŋ sŷy mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet. |
| 8. <u>phǒm</u> tham thúra sèt lésw
I've finished my business | tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt
but he isn't finished yet. |
| 9. <u>phǒm</u> khŷan còtmăaj sèt lésw
I've finished writing a letter | tè kháw jaŋ khŷan mâj sèt
but he isn't finished yet. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>10. phǒm thaan kaafɛɛ sèt léɛw
I've finished drinking coffee</p> | <p>tè kháw jaŋ thaan mâj sèt
but he hasn't yet.</p> |
| <p>11. phǒm tham aahǎan sèt léɛw
I've finishing cooking</p> | <p>tè kháw jaŋ tham mâj sèt
but she hasn't yet.</p> |

1) Expansion Drill

<u>Example 1:</u>	phoo máj	Is it enough?
	weelaa phoo máj	Is the time sufficient?
	mii weelaa phoo máj	Is there sufficient time?
	raw mii weelaa phoo máj	Do we have enough time?

<u>Example 2:</u>	phoo máj	Is it enough?
	aahǎan phoo máj	Is the food sufficient?
	mii aahǎan phoo máj	Is there sufficient food?
	raw mii aahǎan phoo máj	Do we have enough food?

Continue the drill by having the teacher provide cue words which the student incorporates in the sentences given:

<u>Teacher</u>	<u>Students</u>
<p>1. phoo máj khruu mii raw</p>	<p>phoo máj khruu phoo máj mii khruu phoo máj raw mii khruu phoo máj</p>
<p>2. phoo máj náŋsǎy mii khun</p>	<p>phoo máj náŋsǎy phoo máj mii náŋsǎy phoo máj khun mii náŋsǎy phoo máj</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>3. phoo máj
 nən
 mi
 raw</p> | <p>phoo máj
 nən phoo máj
 mi nən phoo máj
 raw mi nən phoo máj</p> |
| <p>4. phoo máj
 nən dyan
 dâj
 khun</p> | <p>phoo máj
 nən dyan phoo máj
 dâj nən dyan phoo máj
 khun dâj nən dyan phoo máj</p> |
| <p>5. phoo máj
 aahǎan
 tham
 kháw</p> | <p>phoo máj
 aahǎan phoo máj
 tham aahǎan phoo máj
 kháw tham aahǎan phoo máj</p> |
| <p>6. phoo máj
 weelaa
 hâj khun
 kháw</p> | <p>phoo máj
 weelaa khun phoo máj
 hâj weelaa khun phoo máj
 kháw hâj weelaa khun phoo máj</p> |

m) Expansion Drill

<u>Example:</u> mâj phoo khráp	It's not sufficient.
T: weelaa	time
S: weelaa mâj phoo khráp	The time is not sufficient.
T: mi	there is
S: mi weelaa mâj phoo khráp	There isn't sufficient time.

THAI BASIC COURSE

T: phǒm I
S: phǒm mii weelaa mâj phoo I do not have sufficient
khráp time.

Continue by supplying the following sets of words and having the students make expansions like the one in the example above:

1. mâj phoo ... khruu ... mii ... raw
2. mâj phoo ... câwnâathîi ... mii ... raw
3. mâj phoo ... ñen ... hâj phǒm ... kháw

n) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Notice the difference in usage between jîam and hăa in the following drill.

1. khun sǒmsii mâj sabaaj . raw ca paj jîam kháw thîi roonphajaabaan
Somsri is not well. We'll go visit her at the hospital.
2. khun sǒmsii mâj sabaaj . khun sǒmsii paj hăa mǒo thîi roonphajaabaan
Somsri is not well. Somsri went to see the doctor at the hospital.
3. phǒm mii thúra kakhun pradît . phǒm ca paj hăa khun pradît.
I have business with Mr. Pradit. I'll go see him.

THAI BASIC COURSE

phǒm paj thamnaan mâj than

The office opens at 8:30 a.m.
I got there at 9:00.
I didn't get to work on time.

4. raw thaan aahǎan klaanwan sèt weelaa bàaj sǒn moon
kwàa.ronriian khâw weelaa bàaj sǒn moon tron.

raw klàp maa rian mâj than

We finished eating lunch after 2:00 a.m.
School starts at 2:00 p.m. sharp.
We didn't return to class on time.

5. weelaa sǒn naathii. phǒm tǒn khít khamtòp sǎam
naathii.

phǒm khít (khamtòp) mâj than

phǒm tòp mâj than

The time (provided) was 2 minutes.
It took me 3 minutes to think of an answer.
I didn't think of the answer in time. (or)
I didn't answer in time.

6. kháw phûut rew kǎen paj. phǒm fan mâj than

He speaks too fast.
I can't catch it.

7. phǒm ca bòk kháw té kháw paj lésw. phǒm bòk
kháw mâj than

I was going to tell him, but he had already gone.
I wasn't in time to tell him.

THAI BASIC COURSE

q) Transformation Drill

T: roonrian khâw weelaa sǎam moon cháaw
School starts at 9:00 a.m.

phǒm maa thǎy roonrian weelaa sǎam moon khrȳn
I got to school at 9:30 a.m.

Cue words: maa roonrian get to school

S: khun maa roonrian mâj than
You didn't get to school on time.

1. thîi thamnaan khǒn phǒm khâw weelaa sǒn moon cháaw
mýacháawníi phǒm paj thǎy thîithamnaan weelaa sǎam
moon cháaw

Cue words: mýacháawníi, paj thamnaan

2. kháw rêem phûut weelaa nyn thûm. phǒm paj thǎy
thîinân weelaa thûm sîisîp hâa

Cue words: paj fan kháw phûut

3. kháw hâj weelaa phǒm tǒp sǒn naathii. phǒm cháj
weelaa tham sǎam naathii

Cue word: tǒp

4. phǒm ca bǒk kháw tè kháw paj léew

Cue word: tǒp

5. rótmee òk càak pâaj weelaa thîan sîp naathii.

phǒm paj thǎy pâaj rótmee weelaa thîan sîp hâa naathii

Cue words: paj khýn rótmee.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. phǒm paj ráp kháw weelaa sǒn thûm. kháw òok càak
bâan weelaa nỳn thûm

Cue words: paj ráp kháw

7. ráankhǎajkhǒn pít weelaa hòk moon jen. phǒm paj
thỳn thîi ráan weelaa nỳn thûm.

Cue words: paj sýy khǒn

r) Sentence Combination Drill (Combine sentences 1 and 2
using dǎaw as the sentence
connective.)

1. raw rîip paj kan the khráp,
raw ca klàp maa mâj than

raw rîip paj kan the khráp,
dǎaw ca klàp maa mâj than.

Let's hurry, otherwise we
won't get back in time.

2. fǒn kamlan tòk
jàa òok paj khâanòok,
khun ca mâj sabaaj

fǒn kamlan tòk, jàa òok paj
khâanòok, dǎaw ca mâj sabaaj

It's raining. Don't go
outside, or you'll get
sick.

3. rîip paj kan thekhráp,
raw ca mâj mii weelaa thaان
aahǎan klaanwan

rîip paj kan thekhráp,
dǎaw ca mâj mii weelaa thaان
aahǎan klaanwan

Let's hurry; otherwise, we
won't have time to eat lunch.

4. jàa cháa nák nakhráp,
khun ca paj mâj than

jàa cháa nák nakhráp,
dǎaw ca paj mâj than

Don't be so slow; otherwise,
you won't get there in time.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. jàa phûut phaasǎa aᅇkrít
kan sikhráp
khun ca lyyᅇm phaasǎa thaj
- jàa phûut phaasǎa aᅇkrít kan
sikhráp, dǎaw ca lyyᅇm phaasǎa-
thaj
- Don't speak English, or you
will forget Thai.
6. jàa duu náᅇsǎy sikhráp
khun ca òok sǎaᅇ mǎj thùuk
- jàa duu náᅇsǎy sikhráp,
dǎaw ca òok sǎaᅇ mǎj thùuk
- Don't look at your book, or
your pronunciation will be
bad.
7. tỳn thəkhráp, sǎaj léew,
khun ca paj thamᅇaan mǎj
than
- tỳn thəkhráp, sǎaj léew,
dǎaw ca paj thamᅇaan mǎj than
- Get up. It's late already.
Otherwise you won't get to
work on time.
8. jàa cháj ᅇəen mǎak nák
khun ca mǎj mi ᅇn thǎaw
juuròop
- jàa cháj ᅇəen mǎak nák,
dǎaw ca mǎj mi ᅇn thǎaw
juuròop
- Don't spend so much money,
otherwise you won't have any
money for your trip to Europe.
9. jàa thamᅇaan mǎak kəen paj
khun ca mǎj sabaaj
- jàa thamᅇaan mǎak kəen paj,
dǎaw ca mǎj sabaaj
- Don't work too much, or
you get sick.
10. jàa thǎaw mǎak
khun ca sòop tòk
- jàa thǎaw mǎak, dǎaw ca sòop
tòk
- Don't go out a lot (in the
evenings) or you'll fail
your exams.

THAI BASIC COURSE

s) Completion Drill

Example: T: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǎaw (raw) ca...

S: rîip paj kan thəkhráp, dǎaw (raw) ca klàp
maa māj than

1. jàa noon dýk nák dǎaw ca...
2. jàa phûut rew nák dǎaw nákrian ca...
3. rîip paj thəkhráp dǎaw ca...
4. phûut phaasǎa thaj kan sikhráp dǎaw ca...
5. jàa cháa nák sikhráp dǎaw ñaan ca...
6. jàa phûut naan kəen paj dǎaw kháw ca...
7. jàa thamñaan mâak kəen paj dǎaw ca...

t) Response Drill (Give a negative response.)

Pattern 1 (Question)

Pattern 2 (Negative Response)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. khun chuan khraj paj
dúaj rýplàaw
Did you ask anyone
to go along? | māj dáj chuan khraj (ləej)
I didn't ask anyone
(at all). |
| 2. khun rúucàk khraj
thfinân bâan māj
Do you recognize
anybody there? | māj rúucàk khraj (ləej)
No, I don't recognize
anybody (at all). |
| 3. phóp khraj bâan rýplàaw
Did you meet anybody? | māj phóp khraj (ləej)
I didn't meet anybody
(at all). |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. sýy araj maa bâan
rýplàaw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you buy anything?</p> | <p>mâj dâj sýy araj maa (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't buy anything.</p> |
| <p>5. kamlan khít araj jùu rýy
Thinking about
something?</p> | <p>mâj dâj khít araj (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I'm not thinking about
anything.</p> |
| <p>6. wanjùt, paj năj bâan
rýplàaw</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you go anywhere
on the holiday?</p> | <p>mâj dâj paj năj (lœj)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't go anywhere.</p> |

u) Response Drill (Give a negative response)

- | <u>Pattern 1</u> | <u>Pattern 2</u> |
|--|---|
| <p>1. mi khraj jùu bâan
Was anybody in?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj jùu
Nobody was in.</p> |
| <p>2. mi khraj rúucàk kháw
bâan
Did anybody recognize
him?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj rúucàk
Nobody recognized him.</p> |
| <p>3. mi khraj hěn bâan
Does anybody see?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj hěn
No one sees.</p> |
| <p>4. mi khraj tham dâj bâan
Can anyone do it?</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj tham dâj
Nobody can do it.</p> |
| <p>5. mi khon maa máj
Is anybody (at all)</p> | <p>mâj mi khraj maa
Nobody came.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. mii khon maa hǎa rýplàaw
Did anyone (at all)
come visiting? | mâj mii khraj maa
Nobody came. |
| 7. mii khon thoo maa bâan
rýplàaw
Did anyone telephone? | mâj mii khraj thoo maa
Nobody called. |

v) Transformation Drill

Change from the human indefinite general form khon
to the human indefinite familiar form khraj.

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. mii <u>khon</u> thoo maa bâan
rýplàaw
Were there any calls? | mii <u>khraj</u> thoo maa bâan
rýplàaw
Did anyone call? |
| 2. mii <u>khon</u> maa hǎa rýplàaw

Were there any
visitors? | mii <u>khraj</u> maa hǎa (phǎm)
rýplàaw
Did anyone come to
see me? |
| 3. mii <u>khon</u> maa lĕn dontriĭ
rýplàaw
Did people come and
play music? | mii <u>khraj</u> maa lĕn dontriĭ
rýplàaw
Did anyone come and
play music? |
| 4. mii <u>khon</u> paj duu kilaa
mâak máj
Do many people go
watch sports? | mii <u>khraj</u> paj duu kilaa
mâj
Does anyone (of you)
(go) watch sports? |
| 5. mii <u>khon</u> paj chûaj kháw
rýplàaw
Did he get help from
anyone? | mii <u>khraj</u> paj chûaj kháw
rýplàaw
Did anybody go
help him? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

w) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khra,jkhra,j bòok phǒm wâa phûujǐn chianmàj sǔaj
Everybody tells me Chiangmai women are beautiful.
2. khra,jkhra,j chǒp phró kháw pen khon sanùk
Everybody likes him because he's a lot of fun.
3. mâj châj phǒm thâwnán, khra,jkhra,j kô jàak ruaj
Not just me, (but) everybody wants to be rich.
4. kháw bòok khra,jkhra,j wâa kháw pen naaj tamrùat
He told everybody he was a policeman.

x) Transformation Drill (Change to negative.)

Pattern 1

1. khra,jkhra,j kô bòok phǒm
wâa chianmàj nâajùu
Everybody told me
Chiangmai is a nice
place to live.
2. khra,jkhra,j kô chǒp kháw
Everybody likes him.
3. khra,jkhra,j kô thǎam phǒm
wâa thammaj khun mâj paj
Everybody asked me
why you didn't go.
4. khra,jkhra,j kô jàak hěn
Everybody wants to
see.

Pattern 2

1. mâj mi khra,j bòok phǒm
wâa chianmàj nâajùu
Nobody told me
Chiangmai was a
nice place to live.
2. mâj mi khra,j chǒp kháw
Nobody likes him.
3. mâj mi khra,j thǎam phǒm
wâa thammaj khun mâj paj
Nobody asked me why
you didn't go.
4. mâj mi khra,j jàak hěn
Nobody wants to see

THAI BASIC COURSE

29.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student extends an invitation to another,
The second student indicates that he is:
1. willing 2. unwilling or 3. reluctant to accept
the invitation.
- b) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he did something.
Student 2 says he didn't.
When student 1 asks him why he didn't, he says
that he didn't want to do it.
- c) Repeat the above exercise except for the final response.
In the final response Student 2 says he didn't do it.
because he was busy, sick, etc.
- d) Student 1 says: 'A friend said to me, would you like
to...'.
Student 2 says: 'Did he invites your wife to go too'.
Student 1 says: 'No, he didn't.'
- e) Student 1: 'Would you like to...'
Student 2: 'Are you inviting my wife to go
along too?'
Student 1: 'I am.'
- f) Student 1 asks Student 2 if he has finished doing
something (reading books, studying, etc.)
Student 2 says he has and tells when he finished (or)
says that he hasn't and gives the reason.
- g) Student 1 asks Student 2 when he arrived at a certain
place. Student 2 gives him the time. Student 1 asks
him if he got there on time. Student 2 says he did
or he didn't.
- h) Student 1 says to Student 2: 'Have you finished --- yet?
Student 2 says: 'Yes, I have, but (Student 3) hasn't yet.
Student 3 says: 'That's not so. I've already finished.'
(Substitute different activities in the first question.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

- i) Student 1: 'Let's hurry.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: Otherwise we won't get to school on time.
(Substitute other place names for school.)
- j) Student 1: 'Don't be so slow.'
Student 2: 'Why?'
Student 3: 'Otherwise you won't get to ... on time.'

29.5 VOCABULARY

aâw	oh! (excl. of surprise, dismay)
aw máj	will you accept? (question word: It is similar in usage to <u>dií máj</u> .)
indianâ	Indiana
òcksĭaŋ	to pronounce
chíkhaakôo	Chicago
dĭaw	or else, otherwise
jĭam	to go to see, to visit
kaanbanjaaj	lecturing, narration
kaanprachum	a meeting conference, session
khamtòp (khôo)	the answer
lĕæk	to be over, to end, to quit, discontinue, to give up, to break up
pâaj	(traffic) stop sign, tag, sign
pâaj rôtmee	bus stop

THAI BASIC COURSE

prachum	to meet (in a group), to hold a meeting, meeting, assemble
pradìt	Pradit (given name)
sèt	to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)
than	to accomplish something in time, to have time to, to catch up to
(kan) thè, (thə, thèet)	why not, let's
thîprachum (hèn)	a meeting (place), assembly, gathering (of people)

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY

(Part I.)

30.1 BASIC EPISODE:

A Visit to the Seventh Day Adventist Hospital

khun coon kamlaŋ ca paj jŋam phŋan thŋi roonphajaabaan mitchhān. phŋan khŋoŋ kháw māj sabaaj maa lǎaj wan léew

kháw hāj khoncháj paj rŋak théksŋi hāj kháw nŋn khan .
kháw māj jāk paj rŋak een phró weelaa théksŋi hēn farān
kháw mák ca bòok raakhaa khāadoojsǎan phseŋ.

khoncháj rŋak théksŋi maa hāj kháw khan nŋn . pen rótmāj .
kháw bòok khun coon wāa càak bāan khun coon paj roonphajaa-
baan mitchhān khonkhàp khít khāadoojsǎan sŋphāa bàat. khun
coon bòok wāa phseŋ paj. kháw hāj khoncháj tòo sŋp bàat.
théksŋi bòok wāa thāa māj dāj sŋpsŋoŋ bàat kháw kŋ māj paj
phró thēwnán rót tít.

théksŋi khonnán khàprót rew māak . khun coon khŋo hāj kháw
khàp cháa cháa tè khonkhàp māj faŋ kháw ləej . khun coon
māj sâap ca tham jaŋŋaj dii.

khun coon māj sâap wāa thaŋ roonphajaabaan anŋjāat hāj
kháw jŋam khonkhāj dāj kŋi moon . kháw paj thŋn thŋinān
cháa kēen paj, kháw ləej paj jŋam phŋan māj than . kháw
rŋak rót théksŋi khan nŋn lé bòok hāj paj sŋn kháw thŋi
talàat nát, sanāam luǎŋ

THAI BASIC COURSE

30.2 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE

1. khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân thammaj
2. thammaj khâw thýn mâj riak théksîi een
3. càak bâan khun coon paj roonphajaabaan mitchân théksîi khít khâadoojsăan thâwràj
4. khun coon hâj khonchâj tòo thâwràj
5. théksîi bòok wâa janṇaj
6. théksîi khonnán khàprót pen janṇaj bâan
7. khun coon tham janṇaj. khâw bòok khonkhàp wâa janṇaj
8. khun coon paj than jîam phyan máj
9. thammaj khâw thýn paj mâj than
10. càak roonphajaabaan mitchân, khâw paj năj

(Part II.)

30.3 BASIC EPISODE: A Visit to the Sunday Market.

khun coon deen thîaw talàatnát jùu lăaj chûamoon. thîinîi mi khḍonkhăaj thúk jàan, thán khḍonchâj, tônmaaaj, lé sàtlían . khḍon thîinîi baan jàan kô thùuk, baan jàan kô phseṇ . khun coon sýy khḍon lăaj jàan . khâw sýy khḍonlên hâj lûuk lé khḍonchâj hâj phanrajaa . khâw sýy khḍon plèekplèek thîi ameerikaa mâj mi hâj khunphôo khunmêe khâw . khâw khít wâa mýa thýn wan khritsamâat khâw ca sòn khḍon làwníi paj hâj khunphôo khunmêe khḍon khâw thîi ameerikaa. sāmrap nõonsăaw khḍonkhâw, khâw jan mâj sâap wâa ca hâj araj dii.

THAI BASIC COURSE

sýy khǒŋ sèt lésw khun cǒn kô ca klàp bâan . khanàthîi kháw kamlan jyyn háa thésîi jùu kháw phóp phýan khon nyn. phýan khonnán chýy khun samǎan khun samǎan khœj rian thîi ameerikaa . mýa rian còp lésw, kháw klàp maa myan thaj lé thamnaan pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan mahàatthaj . kháw dâj thun paj duu naan thîi ameerikaa mýa pii khoosǒo nyn phan kâw rǒoj hòksíp. khun cǒn phóp khun samǎan tǒn thîi khun cǒn kamlan rian phaasǎathaj jùu thîi ameerikaa . tǒnnán kháw phóp khonthaj láaj khon phró weelaa mi khonthaj paj thîi wochintân cawnâathîi krasuan tàanprathêet ca nénam háj nákrían phaasǎathaj rúucàk phró kháw jáak háj nákrían rúucàk khonthaj lé hət phúut phaasǎathaj kàp khonthaj láaj láaj khon.

30.4 QUESTIONS ON THE BASIC EPISODE (Part II.)

1. khun cǒn dœn thîaw jùu naan máj
2. thîinân mi araj khǎaj bâan
3. khǒŋ thîinân thùuk rýy phœn
4. khun cǒn sýy araj dâj bâan
5. wankhrítsamâat khun cǒn ca sǒn araj paj háj khunphǒo khunmêe kháw
6. wan khrítsamâat khun cǒn ca háj khǒŋkhwǎn araj nóŋsǎaw kháw
7. khanàthîi kháw ca klàp kháw phóp khraj
8. khun samǎan thamnaan araj

THAI BASIC COURSE

kháw ca chûaj khun (kô tɛɛ) 'He will help you only
mýa kháw hɛn wâa khun mi when he sees that you
prajòot kakháw are useful to him.'

b) Although both sèt and còp are completive verbs they differ somewhat in meaning and usage:

1. sèt 'to finish some activity (often of indefinite length and of temporary nature)'

kháw thamnaan sèt léɛw 'He has finished working.'

kháw jan tham mâj sèt 'He hasn't finished doing it yet.'

2. còp 'to complete a task (often of prescribed duration, such as a course of study)'

lik 2 dyan phóm ca rian 'I'll finish the Thai
phaasăa thaj còp khráp course in 2 months.'

raw duu năj mâj còp 'We didn't see the movie
to the end.'

NOTE: Either sèt or còp may occur in sentences which are otherwise identical. The selection of one over the other indicates a difference in emphasis or focus. With sèt the focus is on the activity in general; with còp it is on the completion of a particular action.

kháw khían còtmăaj sèt 'He has finished letter
léɛw writing.'

kháw khían còtmăaj còp 'He has finished writing
léɛw a (the) letter.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

30.6 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

m̂ya waanníi	yesterday
m̂ya cháaw	this morning (past time)
m̂ya bàaj sǎoŋ moon	2 p.m. (It's later than that now.)
m̂ya khyyn	last night
m̂ya dèk (dèk)	in childhood
m̂ya phǒm maa thǎyŋ thīnīi	When I had just got here.
màj māj	
m̂ya phǒm jaŋ thamŋaan jùu	When I was still working
thīnân	here.

b) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

- kháw ca maa thǎyŋ weelaa bàaj
moon
He'll get her at 1 p.m.
- phǒm ca thaŋ weelaa hāa moon
jen
I'll eat at 5 p.m.
- phǒm ca phóp kháw jenníi
I'll meet her this evening.
- kháw ca paj tǎoncháaw
They'll go in the morning.

Pattern 2

- kháw maa thǎyŋ (lésw) m̂ya
bàaj moon
He got here at 1 p.m.
- phǒm thaŋ (lésw) m̂ya hāa
moon jen
I ate at 5 p.m.
- phǒm phóp kháw (lésw) m̂ya
jenníi
I met her this evening.
- kháw paj m̂ya (tǎon) cháaw
They went in the morning.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. kháw ca maa hǎa phǒm weelaa kháw maa hǎa phǒm mǎa bàaj
 bàaj moon moon
 He'll come to see me He came to see me at
 at 1 p.m. 1 p.m.

c) Response Drill

The instructor reads a cue sentence then forms a question based on it. A student gives a response to it. The instructor forms a second sentence, and the student answers that. Sentences and responses are based on the cue sentence.

1. mǎa kháw rian còp, kháw kô klàp maa myan thaj
 When he finished his studies, he returned to
 Thailand.

Question

mǎa kháw rian còp,
kháw tham janṇaj

When he finished his
studies, what did he
do?

Response

kháw klàp paj myan thaj

He returned to Thailand.

2. mǎa kháw dèk dèk, kháw chòp nǐi rian
 When he was a child, he liked to avoid studying.

Question

mǎa dèk dèk, kháw pen
janṇaj

What was he like, when
he was a child?

Response

kháw chòp nǐi rian

He liked to avoid
studying.

THAI BASIC COURSE

kháw chôop nǐi rian m̄yaraj m̄ya dèk dèk
When did he like to avoid When he was a child.
studying?

3. phǒm maa m̄ya kháw paj lésw
I came when he had already gone.

Question

phǒm maa m̄yaraj
When did I come?

Response

m̄ya kháw paj lésw
When he had already
gone.

toon thǐi kháw jan jùu
phǒm maa rýjan
Had I come while he
was still there?

jan m̄aj maa . khun maa
m̄ya kháw paj lésw
Not yet. You came after
he had already gone.

4. m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa thaj màj màj, phǒm khít
wâa phaasǎa thaj jâak mâak
Right after I started studying Thai, I thought
it was very hard.

Question

m̄ya phǒm rêem rian phaasǎa
thaj màj màj, phǒm rúusýk
janñaj

Right after I began
studying Thai, how
did I feel?

Response

khun khít wâa phaasǎa thaj
jâak mâak

You thought Thai was
very hard.

THAI BASIC COURSE

tɔɔnníi phǒm khít wâa phaasǎa
thaj mâj jâak, châj máj

Now I think Thai isn't
hard, right?

mâj châj, tɔɔnníi khun
khít wâa mâj jâak myǎn myǎ
tɔɔnthîi khun rian màj màj

Not so. Now you don't
think it's (as) hard (as)
when you first started
studying it.

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading this book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêmníi còp lèew khráp I have finished reading this book.
2. khun àan nǎnsǎy lêmnan còp lèew rýjaŋ khráp Have you finished reading that book yet?	phǒm àan nǎnsǎy lêm nan jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished reading that book yet.
3. khun khǎan còtmǎaj còp léew rýjaŋ khráp. phǒm ca paj sòŋ hâj Have you finished writing that letter yet? I'll mail it for you.	phǒm khǎan còtmǎaj jaŋ mâj còp khráp I haven't finished writing the letter yet.
4. khun ca rian phaasǎa thaj còp myǎràj khráp When will you finish studying Thai?	phǒm ca rian còp dyan nâa khráp I'll finish next month.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>5. khun rian bòt thfi síp pèet còp
léesw rýjaŋ khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Have you finished studying
lesson 18 yet?</p> | <p>(phǒm) rian (bót thfi síp
pèet) jaŋ mâj còp khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(I) haven't finished
studying (lesson 18)
yet.</p> |
| <p>6. mýakhyynníi, khun duu nǎŋ còp
máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish seeing the
movie last night? (see to
the end)</p> | <p>mýakhyynníi, raw duu nǎŋ
mâj còp phró tǒŋ ríip
klàp bâan kòon nǎŋ lâek</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">No, because we had to
hurry home before it
was over.</p> |
| <p>7. khun phûut còp (rýaŋ) máj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Did you finish telling
your story.</p> | <p>phǒm phûut mâj còp khráp
phró kháw hâj weelaa phǒm
nóŋj kǎen paj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I didn't finish because
they gave me too little
time.</p> |
| <p>8. khun rian (mahǎawítthajaalaj)
còp pii nǎj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">In which year did you
graduate from the university?</p> | <p>phǒm { riancòp pii phoosǒ
 { còp</p> <p>sǒŋ phan hâaróŋj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated in B.E.
2500.</p> |
| <p>9. khun cóp càak mahǎawít-
thajaalaj araj khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">What university did you
graduate from?</p> | <p>phǒm còp càak mahǎawíttha-
jaalaj indianâa khráp</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I graduated from the
University of Indiana.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

Translation of Basic Episode: Part I.

John is about to go visit a friend at the 7th Day Adventist Hospital. His friend has been ill for several days.

He had a servant to get a taxi (for him). He didn't want to go for one himself, because whenever taxis see a Westerner, they ask for higher fares.

The servant called a taxi for him. It was new. He told John the driver figured the fare from his house to the Adventist Hospital at 15 baht. John said it was too expensive. He had the servant bargain for 10. The taxi (driver) said that if he didn't get 12 baht, then he wasn't going because the traffic was heavy in that area.

The driver drove very fast. John asked him to drive slower, but the driver didn't listen to him at all. John didn't know what to do.

John didn't know at what time the hospital allowed one to visit patients. He got there too late, so he didn't get there in time to visit his friend. He called a taxi and told (the driver) to take him to the (Sunday) Market at the Pramane Grounds.

Translation of Basic Episode: Part II.

John spent hours walking around at the Sunday Market. There were all kinds of things for sale there: things to use, plants, and pets. Some things were cheap; some expensive. John bought a lot of things. He bought toys for children and things to use for his wife. He bought unusual things that are not available in the U.S. for his mother and father. He thought he'd send some of these things to his mother and father in America at Christmas. He didn't know what he ought to give to his younger sister.

The shopping done, John goes home. While he is standing looking for a taxi, he meets a friend. His friend is name Saman. Saman studied in America. After he graduated, he

THAI BASIC COURSE

returned to Thailand and worked as an employee of the Ministry of the Interior. He got a grant to go observe work (1) in America in 1960. John met Saman while John was studying Thai in America. At that time he met many Thais because when there are Thais visiting Washington, State Department officials introduce them to the students of Thai, because they want student to meet Thais and to practice speaking Thai with many Thais.

30.7 VOCABULARY

duu naan	to observe work, an observation
(fỳk)hàt	to practice, drill, train
khanáthîi	while
khonkhâj (khon)	patients
khǒŋlên (jàaŋ)	play things, toy
làwníi	these, this group
làwnán	those, that group
nénam	to introduce, to advise, to suggest
khamnénam	advice, suggestion, instruction
plèesk (plèesk)	to be unusual, to be strange
samǎan	Saman, male or female first name
sàt (tua)	animal
...líaaŋ (tua)	pet
thun (thun)	a grant, fund, investment, a scholarship, a fellowship
tôn máaj (tôn)	plants, tree

(1) An observation tour

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-ONE

31.0 BASIC DIALOG: Looking for a Place to Live

- A: m̄yawaanníi phǒm paj hǎa
khun t̄e m̄aj phóp
Yesterday I went to see you
but didn't see you.
- B: phǒm paj hǎa b̄anch̄aw
I went to look for a house
to rent.
- A: khun ca j̄u eej l̄
Will you live (there)
yourself?
- B: pl̄aaw. hǎa h̄aj ph̄yan
khun w̄a, j̄u b̄an ka j̄u
aph̄aatm̄en n̄aj ca dii kw̄a
kan
No. I'm looking for a friend.
You think it's better to live
in a house or an apartment?
- A: ph̄yan khun pen s̄ot r̄y
t̄en̄naan l̄eew
Is your friend single or
married?
- B: pen s̄ot khr̄ap
He's single.
- A: khwaamcin, tua phǒm eej
ch̄ōp j̄u b̄an m̄ak kw̄a
t̄e s̄amr̄ap khon s̄ot, phǒm
w̄a j̄u fl̄et dii kw̄a
Actually, as for me I
prefer living in a house.
But for single persons, I
think living in a flat is
better
- B: tham̄aj lakhr̄ap
Why?
- A: sad̄uak kw̄a j̄u b̄an
l̄e p̄lan̄ n̄ōj kw̄a phr̄o
m̄aj t̄ōn c̄an̄ khonch̄aj
l̄aj khon
It's more convenient than
living in a house.
And less expensive, because
you don't have to hire a
lot of servants.

THAI BASIC COURSE

<p>B: cɪnǎ́ plòt phaj kwàa dūaj mâj tɔŋ klua khamooj</p>	<p>Right. It's safer too. You don't have to be afraid of thieves.</p>
--	---

31.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) phóp and dâj occur after hǎa 'to look for', try to find' and indicate the result of the action of 'looking'.

Observe the following examples:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Responses</u>	
	<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>
<u>hǎa phóp máj</u>	(hǎa) <u>phóp</u>	(hǎa) <u>mâj phóp</u>
'Did you get to see him?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'
<u>hǎa dâj máj</u>	(hǎa) <u>dâj</u>	(hǎa) <u>mâj dâj</u>
'Did you get (what you were looking for)?'	'Yes, I did.'	'No, I didn't.'

Observe also these two examples:

(phǒm) hǎa mâj dâj phró mâj miɪ khǎaj
'I didn't get any because it wasn't for sale.'

(phǒm) hǎa mâj phóp phró mâj jùu
'I didn't get to see him because he wasn't in.'

cəe 'to meet, run into unexpectedly' may replace phóp in constructions with hǎa involving human beings, thus hǎa phóp máj or hǎa cəe máj 'Did you get to see him?'. In constructions referring to objects cəe rather than phóp is used, thus

THAI BASIC COURSE

- A: nánsǎy hǎa j 'I lost my book.'
B: hǎa cəe má j 'Did you find it?'
A: mâ j cəe 'No, I didn't.'

When cəe is used as the main verb in the sentence, it has the meaning 'to meet unexpectedly':

mýawaanní phǒm cəe phýan kàw
'Yesterday I ran into an old friend.'

b) /kwàa/ means 'more than, to a greater extent'.

1. After stative verbs, use /kwàa/ alone.

Examples:

phaasǎa aṅkrít jâak kwàa phaasǎa thaj
'English is more difficult than Thai.'

2. After other verbs, use mâak kwàa for 'more than'
and nóoj kwàa for 'less than'.

Examples:

piiní raw mii nákrían nóoj kwàa pii kòon.
'This year we have more students than last year.'

phǒm chôp khun mâak kwàa kháw
'I like you less than him.'

3. Where degree of difference is stated, observe in the following examples, the position of forms indicating degree of difference.

THAI BASIC COURSE

	NP ¹	Stative Verb + <u>kwaa</u>	NP ²	Degree of Difference	
(1.)	thîinîi mi Here there are	nákrian students	mâak kwàa more than	khruu teachers	400 khon 400
		'There are 400 more students than teachers here.'			
(2.)	khun you	sǔaj kwàa pretty more than	kháw she	mâak much a lot	
		'You are a lot prettier than she (is).'			

c) khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj versus khít araj

Use jaŋŋaj when asking for a person's opinion or comment on something.

khun khít (wâa) jaŋŋaj 'What do you think?'

khun wâa jaŋŋaj (What's your opinion?)

kháw wâa jaŋŋaj 'What did he say?'
(What was his reaction?)

Use araj to find out what is in a person's mind.

khun kamlaŋ khít araj 'What are you thinking
{ about?'
{ of?'

THAI BASIC COURSE

31.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill.

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u> (contracted form)
1. hǎa tɛɛ mâj phóp locked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj phóp didn't find
2. hǎa tɛɛ mâj cəə looked for but didn't meet with	hǎa mâj cəə didn't find
3. hǎa tɛɛ mâj dâj looked for but didn't get	hǎa mâj dâj didn't succeed in getting

b) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns a and b to form Pattern c.)

<u>Patterns a and b</u>	<u>Pattern c</u>
1. kháw jàak phóp phýan a. kháw paj hǎa phýan thîi bân He wanted to see his friend. He went to see his friend at home. He did not meet his friend.	kháw paj hǎa phýan (tɛɛ) <u>mâj phóp</u> He went to see his friend but didn't see him.
2. lûuksǎaw kháw hǎaj a. kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw b. kháw mâj { cəə lûuksǎaw { phóp His daughter disappeared. He looked for his daughter. He didn't find his daughter.	kháw hǎa lûuksǎaw (tɛɛ) <u>mâj</u> { <u>cəə</u> { <u>phóp</u> He looked for his daughter without success.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. nánsǎy phǒm hǎaj phǒm hǎa nánsǎy
a. phǒm hǎa nánsǎy (tèe) mâj cəe
b. phǒm mâj cəe nánsǎy I looked for my book
My book was lost. without success.
I looked for my book.
I didn't discover my book.
4. phǒm jàak dâj nánsǎy lêmnan phǒm hǎa (sýy) nánsǎy
a. phǒm hǎa (sýy) nánsǎy lêmnan lêmnan (tèe) mâj dâj
b. phǒm mâj dâj nánsǎy lêmnan I tried unsuccessfully
I'd like to get that book. to get (buy) that book.
I sought (to buy) that book.
I didn't get that book.
- c) Expansion Drill
1. dâj máj khráp dâj máj khráp
hǎa hǎa dâj máj khráp
sýy hǎa sýy dâj máj khráp
pàakkaa hǎa sýy pàakkaa dâj máj khráp
2. phóp máj khráp phóp máj khráp
hǎa hǎa phóp máj khráp
phyan hǎa phyan phóp máj khráp
3. cəe máj khráp cəe máj khráp
hǎa hǎa cəe máj khráp
khǒɔŋ hǎa khǒɔŋ cəe máj khráp

THAI BASIC COURSE

- d) Response Drill (Respond affirmatively to the questions, if the cue word indicates that the search was successful (jùu), respond negatively, if the cue word indicates that the search was unsuccessful (mâj jùu).

<u>Question</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mŷawaanníi khun paj hăa kháw phóp máj khráp Did you find him when you went to see him yesterday?	kháw jùu He was in.	phóp khráp (Yes) I did.
2. mŷakîiníi khun paj hăa nákpahasăa phóp máj khráp When you went to see the linguist a while ago, did you find him?	mâj jùu He wasn't in.	mâj phóp khráp (No), I didn't.
3. mŷakhyynníi, kháw maa hăa khun phóp máj When he came to see you last night, did he see you?	jùu I was in.	phóp khráp He did.
4. (khun) paj hăa mŷo phóp máj When you went to see the doctor, did you see him?	jùu He was in.	phóp khráp I did.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. m̄yákíní, ph̄yan khun maa

h̄aa khun th̄i roon̄rian

phóp máj khráp

m̄aj j̄uu

m̄aj phóp

A short time ago when
your friend came to
see you at school,
did you meet?

I wasn't in.

He didn't.

6. khun h̄aa b̄ee thoorasàp

kh̄õõj kh̄aw naj samùt

thoorasàp phóp máj khráp

m̄aj j̄uu naj samùt

m̄aj phóp

Did you find his number
in the phone book?

It wasn't there.

I didn't.

e) Substitution Response Drill

The teacher gives 2 cue words. One student forms a statement using the first cue word. Another student asks the question h̄aa c̄ee máj khráp. The first then responds either negatively or affirmatively according to the second cue word.

<u>Cue word</u>	<u>Statement/question/response</u>	
<u>n̄ans̄ȳy</u> No	S1: n̄ans̄ȳy ph̄õm h̄aj	My book was lost.
	S2: h̄aa c̄ee máj khráp	Did you find it?
	S1: <u>m̄aj c̄ee</u> khráp	No, I didn't.

Continue the drill using the following cue words:

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. n̄en ph̄õm.... No | 2. p̄aakkaa ph̄õm.... Yes |
| 3. d̄ins̄õõ ph̄õm.... No | 4. l̄ũuks̄aw.... No |
| 5. khonch̄áj.... Yes | 6. r̄ót ph̄õm.... Yes |
| 7. naalikaa kh̄aw.... No | 8. krap̄aw ph̄õm.... No |

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. mii	khun hǎa nǎnsǎy lĕmnán dâj máj khráp Did you find that book?	dâj khráp I did.
2. mii	khun hǎa sýy nǎnsǎy phaasǎa thaj dâj máj khráp Were you able to buy the Thai book you were looking for?	dâj khráp I was.
3. mâj mii	khun hǎa khoncháj dâj máj khráp Were you able to find the servants you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp No, I wasn't.
4. mâj mii	kháv hǎa khruu sǒn phaasǎa ankrít dâj máj khráp Did you find the English teacher you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp No, I didn't.
5. mâj mii	khun hǎa bâan dâj máj khráp Did you find the house you were looking for?	mâj dâj khráp No, I didn't.

g) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

1. mýawaanníi rǒon
Yesterday it was hot.
- wanníi rǒon mâak
Today it's very hot.

Pattern 3

- wanníi rǒon kwàa mýawaanníi
It's hotter today than
yesterday.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. phûujǐn khonnán suǎj

That girl's pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi sǔaj mâak

This girl's very pretty.

phûujǐn khonníi suǎj kwàa

phûujǐn khonnán

This girl is prettier
than that one.

3. bâan phǒm klaj

My house is far.

bâan kháw klaj mâak

His house is very far.

bâan kháw klaj kwàa bâan phǒm

His house is farther than
mine.

4. klaanwan rǒon

In the daytime it's hot.

klaanxhyyn mâj rǒon

At night it's not hot.

klaanwan rǒon kwàa klaanxhyyn

It's hotter in the daytime
than at night.

5. thǐinôn aakàat dii

There the weather is good.

thǐiníi aakàat dii mâak

Here the weather is
very good.

thǐiníi aakàat dii kwàa

thǐinôn

Here the weather is better
than there.

6. nákrían khonníi kèn

This student is smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn mâak

That student is very smart.

nákrían khonnán kèn kwàa

nákrían khonníi

That student is smarter
than this one.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. aahǎan thîi ráannán dii

The food in that shop
is good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii mâak.

The food in this shop
is very good.

aahǎan thîi ráanníi dii kwàa
raannán

The food in this shop
is better than in that
shop.

8. kháw duu nánsǎy dỳk

He studies late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dỳk mâak

I study very late at night.

phǒm duu nánsǎy dỳk kwàa kháw

I study later at night
than he.

9. kháw maa roonriian cháaw

He came to school early.

phǒm maa roonriian sǎaj

I came to school late.

phǒm maa roonriian sǎaj kwàa
khw

I came to school later
than he.

(kháw maa roonriian cháaw
kwàa phǒm)

He came to school earlier
than I.

10. phaasǎa thaj mâj jâak

Thai is not hard.

phaasǎa ankrít jâak

English is hard.

phaasǎa ankrít jâak kwàa

phaasǎa thaj

English is harder than Thai.

THAI BASIC COURSE

11. naan wannán mâj sànuak

That day's party wasn't fun.

naan wanníi sanùk

Today's party is fun.

naan wanníi sanùk kwàa

naan wannán

The party today is more
fun than that other party.

12. rôt kháw kàw

His car is old.

rôt phǒm màj

My car is new.

rôt phǒm màj kwàa rôt kháw

My car is newer than his.

13. jùu bâan sadùak

It's convenient to live
in a house.

jùu apháatmên sadùak mâak

It's very convenient to
live in an apartment.

jùu apháatmên sadùak kwàa

jùu bâan

Living in an apartment
is more convenient than
living in a house.

14. jùu apháatmênt mâj plyaŋ

Living in an apartment
is not expensive.

jùu bâan plyaŋ mâak

Living in a house is
very expensive.

jùu bâan plyaŋ kwàa jùu

apháatmên

Living in a house is
more expensive than
living in an apartment.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. jùu naj myaŋ	jùu naj myaŋ ka jùu nòk myaŋ, nǎj ca saduak kwàa kan Which is more convenient, living in town or in the country?	jùu naj myaŋ saduak kwàa Living in the city.
2. jùu krunthêep	jùu krunthêep ka jùu tàaŋcaŋwàt, nǎj ca plyaŋ kwàa kan Which is more expensive, living in Bangkok or the provinces?	jùu krunthêep plyaŋ kwàa Living in Bangkok.
3. ubon	ubon ka khorâat, nǎj ca jùu klaj (càak krunthêep) kwàa kan Which is farther from Bangkok, Ubon or Korat?	ubon klaj kwàa Ubon.
4. sùkhõothaj	caŋwàt ajúthajaa ka sùkhõothaj, nǎj ca kàw kwàa kan Which is older, Ayuthaya or Sukhotai province?	sùkhõothaj kàw kwàa Sukhotai.
5. rót khannán	rót khannán ka rót khanní, nǎj ca phœŋ kwàa kan Which is more expensive, that car or this one?	rót khannán phœŋ kwàa That one.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 6. | nákrían chánnán nákrían chánnán ka channíí,
nǎj ca mâak kwàa kan
In which class are there
more students, that one
or this one? | nákrían chánnán
mâak kwàa
That one. |
| 7. | krunthêep ka chianmàj,
nǎj ca mii khon jùu mâak
kwàa kan
Which has a larger
population, Bangkok
or Chiangmai? | krunthêep mii
khonjùu mâak
kwàa
Bangkok. |

1) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nakrian kàw	nákrían kàw ka nákrían màj, khraj ca phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj dii kwàa kan Which can speak Thai better, the old students or the new ones?	nákrían kàw phûut dâj dii kwàa The old.
2. khun sawàt	khun sawàt kakhun prasǎng khraj (ca) kèn kwàa kan Who is more skillful, Sawat or Prasong?	khun sawàt kèn kwàa Sawat.
3. phÿan khonnán	phÿan khun khonnán ka khonníí, khraj (ca) khâwcaj khun dii kwàa kan Who understands you better, that friend of yours or this one?	phÿan phǎm khonnán khâwcaj phǎm dii kwàa That one understands me better.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun coon khun coon ka khun cim, khraj khun coon khàp
 khàp rót rew kwàa kan rew kwàa
 Who drives faster,
 John or Jim? John.

j) Expansion Drill

1. mâak kwàa
 mii mâak kwàa
 mii ñen mâak kwàa
 kháw mii ñen mâak kwàa
 kháw mii ñen mâak kwàa phǒm
2. mâak kwàa
 mii mâak kwàa
 mii nákrían mâak kwàa
 chánán mii nákrían mâak kwàa
 chánán mii nákrían mâak kwàa cháníí
3. mâak kwàa
 mii mâak kwàa
 mii weelaa mâak kwàa
 mii weelaa wâan mâak kwàa
 kháw mii weelaa wâan mâak kwàa
 kháw mii weelaa wâan kwàa phǒm
4. mâak kwàa
 chǒp mâak kwàa
 chǒp jùu bâan mâak kwàa
 phǒm chǒp jùu bâan mâak kwàa
 phǒm chǒp jùu bâan mâak kwàa jùu apháatmênt

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. mâak kwàa
chôp mâak kwàa
chôp khun mâak kwàa
phôm chôp khun mâak kwàa
phôm chôp khun mâak kwàa kháw

6. mâak kwàa
tham mâak kwàa
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa phôm
kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa phôm lăaj chûamoon

k) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1 and 2

Pattern 3

1. kháw rian nánsŷy wan la hòk
chûamoon

He has classes 6 hours a day.

raw rian nánsŷy wan la sŷi
chûamoon

We have classes 4 hours
a day.

kháw rian nánsŷy mâak kwàa
raw wan la sŷon chûamoon

He has classes 2 hours
more per day than we do.

2. thŷi roonrian mi khruu
róoj khon

There are 100 teachers
at school.

thŷi roonrian mi nákrían
hâa róoj khon

There are 500 students
at school.

thŷi roonrian mi nákrían
mâak kwàa khruu sŷi róoj khon

There are 400 more students
than teachers at school.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. khun wichaj miì b`ut s`ii khon

Wichai has 4 children.

khun pras`et miì b`ut s`o`ng khon

Prasert has 2 children.

khun wichaj miì b`ut m`aak

kw`aa khun pras`et s`o`ng khon

Wichai has 2 more children
than Prasert.

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

n`o`j kw`aa	less
plyan n`o`j kw`aa	less beautiful
miì n`o`j kw`aa	have less
ch`o`p n`o`j kw`aa	like less
ph`ut n`o`j kw`aa	speak less
tham n`o`j kw`aa	do less
thaan n`o`j kw`aa	eat less
s`y n`o`j kw`aa	buy less
rian n`o`j kw`aa	study less

m) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kh`o`ng th`i r`aan n`i miì m`aak kw`aa

kh`o`ng th`i r`aan n`oon

There are more things in
this shop than that one.

2. kh`aw miì n`en m`aak kw`aa ph`om

He has more money than I.

Pattern 2

kh`o`ng th`i r`aan n`oon miì

n`o`j kw`aa r`aan n`i

There are less things
in that shop than this
one.

ph`om miì n`en n`o`j kw`aa kh`aw

I have less money than he.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. kháw cháj nøen mâak kwàa phǒm. phǒm cháj nøn nóoj kwàa kháw
He spends more money than I. I spend less money than he.
4. jùu bâan plyan kwàa jùu
apháatmên. jùu apháatmênt plyan nóoj
kwàa jùu bâan
Living in a house is more expensive than living in an apartment. Living in an apartment is less expensive than living in a house.
5. nóoj khǒj khun sǒmsàk rian
mâak kwàa khun sǒmsàk
Somsak's younger brothers and sisters study more than he. khun sǒmsàk rian nóoj kwàa
nóoj khǒj kháw
Somsak studies less than his younger siblings.
6. phûujǐn khonnán phûut mâak
kwàa phûujǐn khonnón
That woman talks more than the one over there. phûujǐn khonnón phûut nóoj
kwàa phûujǐn khonnán
The woman over there talks less than that one.
7. phǒm chǒp phýan kháw mâak
kwàa kháw
I like his friends better than him. phǒm chǒp kháw nóoj kwàa
phýan kháw
I like him less than (I like) his friends.
8. khun sǒmsǐi suǎj kwàa
nóoj sǎaw kháw
Somsri is prettier than her younger sister. nóoj sǎaw khun sǒmsǐi
nóoj kwàa khun sǒmsǐi
Somsri's younger sister is less pretty than Somsri.
9. kháw thamnaan mâak kwàa
phǒm aathít la hòk chûamoon
He works 6 hours a week more than I do. phǒm thamnaan nóoj kwàa kháw
aathít la hòk chûamoon
I work 6 hours a week less than he does.

THAI BASIC COURSE

10. phǎichaaǰ phǎm mii bùt mâak
kwàa phǎm sǎon khon
My older brother has 2
more children than I.
- phǎm mii bùt nóoj kwàa
phǎichaaǰ phǎm sǎon khon
I have two less children
than my older brother.

n) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

1. phǎm khít wâa, jùu apháatmên
dii kwàa
I think living in an apartment is better.
2. phǎm khít wâa, pen sòot dii kwàa
I think being single is better.
3. phǎm khít wâa, phɛɛŋ paj
I think it's too expensive.
4. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca
bòok kháw
I think we should tell her.
5. phǎm khít wâa, raw khuan ca
bòok (paj) kòon thǎn
I think we should leave before noon.
6. phǎm khít wâa, raw mâj khuan
sýy rót khannán
I don't think we should buy the car.
7. phǎm khít wâa, kháw khon maa
I think he will surely come.

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Expansion Drill

janṇaj	How.
wâa (jaṇ) ṇaj	What do (you) think ¹ ?
khun wâa janṇaj	What do you think?
khun <u>khít</u> wâa janṇaj	What do you think?
khun <u>mii</u> <u>khwaam</u> <u>khít</u> <u>hěn</u> wâa janṇaj	What's your opinion?
khun mii khwaam khít hěn <u>kìaw</u> <u>kàp</u>	What's your opinion
ryâṇṇíí wâa janṇaj	about this matter?
{ bân	
{ mân	

p) Expansion Drill

Pattern 1

Pattern 2

<p>1. phǒm wâa dii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's good.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa dii, khun la khráp, wâa janṇaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's good. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>2. phǒm wâa mâj khuan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you shouldn't.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa mâj khuan, khun la khráp, wâa janṇaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you shouldn't. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>3. phǒm wâa khuan</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you should.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa khuan, khun la khráp wâa janṇaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think you should. And you, what do you think?</p>
<p>4. phǒm wâa mâj thùuk</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's not so.</p>	<p>phǒm wâa mâj thùuk, khun la khráp, wâa janṇaj</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">I think it's not so. And you? what do you think?</p>

¹(Idiom = 'What are you up to?' [To Intimates or Inferiors])

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj phǒm wâa phɛɛŋ paj, khun la khráp,
wâa jaŋŋaj
I think it's too expensive. I think it's too expensive.
And what do you think?
6. phǒm wâa nâab̀ya phǒm wâa nâab̀ya, khun lakhráp,
wâa jaŋŋaj
I think it's boring. I think it's boring. And you,
what do you think?

31.3 EXERCISES

- a) Have students compare various persons and objects in terms of certain qualities (good, pretty, etc.).
- b) Compare various activities in terms of convenience, pleasure, etc.
- c) One student expresses an opinion and asks another student's opinion of the same thing.
- d) One student reports on the loss of some object (watch, etc.) A second asks if he has found it. He indicates he has or hasn't.
- e) One student says that he went to look for something or someone. Another asks if he was successful in his search. The first indicates he was (or wasn't).
- f) Two students compare the weather 1) on different days, 2) in different months, 3) at different times of the day, and 4) in different places.
- g) One student asks another about the weather at some other place or some other time of the year.
- h) Find out which of 2 things various students prefer.
- i) Find out the extent of superiority of one thing over another.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- j) Compare the number of hours per day or week various people participate in various activities.
- k) One student asks another his opinion on something. The second gives it.
- l) One student asks another what he is thinking about at the moment.
- m) One student asks another if he thinks he should do one thing or the other. The second gives his opinion.

31.4 VOCABULARY

apháatmên (lǎŋ)	apartments
bâanchâw (lǎŋ)	a house to rent
cəə	to meet with unexpectedly
châw	to rent
(hǎa) dâj	to get. (It indicates that the speaker was able to get the things he was looking for.)
hǎa { phóp	to meet with (indicates that the search resulted in meeting with persons or things)
{ cəə	
hǎaj (paŋ)	to disappear, vanish, to be missing, be lost from sight
jâak	to be difficult
khâacâaŋ	wage, wages, pay
khamooj	thief, robber
khwaamciŋ	truthfully, actually
khwaamkhíthěn	opinion
k̀law k̀ap	about
klua	to be afraid of
kwàa	more than, to a greater extent
lǎŋ	classifier for houses and buildings

THAI BASIC COURSE

mâṅ / bâṅ	some (out of a number), somewhat, in part, partly, to some extent
nóṅ	to be little, small, less, slight (in quantity)
plòṅtphaṅ	to be safe, out of danger
plyaṅ	to use up, to consume, to waste (e.g. money, time resources) the expenses; to be expensive
sadùak	to be convenient
samùt thoorasàp (lêm)	a phone book
sathǎanthîi (hèn)	place, site (place equipped for particular kind of work, activity, etc.)
sǎa	to pay out (money) to waste, lose (time) to be obligated to pay
sòot	to be single, unmarried state
(khon) sòot	single person, bachelor, spinster
tua phǎm eeaṅ	I (myself)
... kháw eeaṅ	he (himself)
... raw eeaṅ	we (ourselves), more emphatic than 'tua' alone
wâa	to say, criticize, to think, to have an opinion

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-TWO

32.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (2)

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw léew rýjan Have you got a house to rent yet?
- B: jan khráp Not yet.
- A: naj sooj bâan phôm mii bâan On my lane there's a house for rent.
wâan hâj châw jùu lănnyj
- B: khâw khít khâachâw janñaj khráp How much is the rent?
- A: phôm mâj dâj thăam raaj la-íat I didn't ask the details.
pen bâanmâj It's a new house.
nâajùu dii It's cozy.
sámrap khrôpkhrua léklék For a small family like yours the size is just right, not too small, not too big.
jàan khun, khanàat kamlan
phoodii, mâj lék mâj jàj
kœen paj
- B: jùu klaj càak thanôn jàj máj Is it far from the main street?
khráp
- A: jùu hàan càak pàak sooj raaw It's around 2 kilometers or so from the end of the lane.
raaw sŏon kiloo kwàa khráp
- B: phôm ca tittò ka câwkhŏon- How do I get in touch with the owner?
bâan dâj janñaj
- A: thoo paj thăam khâw doojtron Call him directly.
khráp.mâj tŏon phàn naajnâa You don't have to go through the agent.
- B: bâan khâw thoorasàp bæe araj What's his home phone number?
- A: bæe kâaw hòk thoo sām sī hòk 962-346

THAI BASIC COURSE

32.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) The stative verb dii occurs in several different types of constructions with different meanings:

X + <u>dii</u>	Examples	Meaning of <u>dii</u>
I. <u>Nouns</u>		
A. Animate (Human)		
1. People in general	<u>khon dii</u>	good moral character
2. People in special roles	<u>khruu thfi dii</u> ¹	good at doing something
B. Inanimate		
1. Objects	<u>tó dii</u>	good quality
2. Places	<u>krunthêep dii</u> ²	good for some special purpose
II. <u>Verbs</u>		
A. Action verbs	<u>kháw rian dii</u>	well, efficiently
B. Stative verbs	<u>jàj dii</u>	nice and (big)
III. <u>Sentences</u>		
A. Questions	<u>tham araj dii</u>	to be acceptable, all right

1. When used with nouns indicating family roles (son, etc.), professional roles (teacher, etc.), thfidii is used to indicate that the person is performing well in that particular role without regard to his moral character.
2. This type of construction can only be used when it is clear from the context in what respect a place can be called 'good'.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b) mii ... jùu calls attention to the fact that a certain thing is in existence at a particular time or place. Its existence may be temporary or accidental.

toon nán phǒm mii nēen jùu raaw hâasìp bàat thâwnán

At that time I had only about fifty baht (on me).

tronj pàak sooj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu ráan nyn

Right at the end of the lane there is (located) a coffee shop.

- c) khít jaṅṅaj means 'how is it figured?(what is included in the calculations)'

kháw khít khâachâw jaṅṅaj khráp

'How is the rent figured? (What's included in the rent?)'

khít thâwraṅ means 'How much does it amount to?';

kháw khít khâachâw thâwraṅ, 'How much is the rent?'

- d) nâa is a verb meaning 'worthy of, leading to, or able' which combines with other verbs to form verb compounds:

nâarák 'loveable, cute: nâa 'worthy of' + rák 'love'

nâacháj 'nice to use': nâa 'nice' + cháj 'to use'

nâaduu 'interesting to look at' : nâa 'interesting' + duu 'look at'

- e) tít tòc kàp means 'to contact or get in touch with' someone.

phǒm ca tít tòc ka câwkhǎon bâan dâj jaṅṅaj

'How do I get in touch with the owner of the house?'

- f) hàan means 'to be separated by a certain distance'. It is limited to use in sentences referring to the extent of the distance between two points.

THAI BASIC COURSE

bâan lănnán jùu hàan càak thanǎn jàj 2 kiloo

'That house is 2 kilometers from the main street!'

klaj 'to be far' can replace hàan in constructions like the one above and can be used in other construction in which hàan can not be used, as follows:

Q: krunthêep jùu klaj càak thîinfi máj

'Is Bangkok far from here?'

A: máj klaj mâak kháp 'Not very far.'

Or in sentences where klaj is used with verbs of action:
kháw tii lûuk klaj mâak 'He hit the ball very far.'

32.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Besides the verbs maa (towards the speaker) and paj (away from the speaker) thoorasàp may be followed by other words.

Observe the following examples:

(a) Calling a place

$$\text{phǎm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \text{thîi} + \text{PLACE}$$

'I telephoned the... (Place).'

(b) Calling a person

$$\text{phǎm thoo(rasàp)} \begin{cases} \text{paj} \\ \text{maa} \end{cases} + \begin{cases} \text{hǎa} \\ \text{thýn} \end{cases} + \text{PERSON}$$

'I called (PERSON) up.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

Both when calling persons and places other action verbs with thoo may occur. Observe the following:

phǒm thoo	{ paj maa }	}	thǎam kháw wâa 'I called to ask him...'
			bòok kháw wâa 'I called to tell him...'
			chuan kháw paj 'I called to invite him to go'
			thǎam thîi+ Place.. 'I called to ask at the ...'

32.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

bâan wâan hâj châw	A house for rent.
nán̄s̄ȳ hâj àan	A book to read.
náam hâj d̄ȳm	Water to drink.
aah̄an hâj thaan	Food to eat.
nǎn̄ hâj duu	A movie to see.
thîi hâj pháak	A place to { stay rest

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

naj sooj bâan phǒm mi bâan wâan hâj châw
jùu lǎn̄n̄n̄

On my lane there is a house for rent.

1. ráankaaf̄s̄

naj sooj bâan phǒm mi ráankaaf̄s̄ jùu ráan n̄n̄
In my lane there is a coffee shop.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. lǎaj ráan naj sɔɔj bāan phǒm mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan
In the lane I live in there are many coffee shops.
3. thǐi pàaksɔɔj thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráankaafɛɛ jùu lǎaj ráan
At the entrance to the lane there are many coffee shops.
4. ráanaahǎan thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu lǎaj ráan
At the entrance to the lane there are many restaurants.
5. ráan nɯŋ thǐi pàak sɔɔj mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nɯŋ
At the entrance to the lane there is a restaurant.
6. thǐinân thǐinân mii ráanaahǎan jùu ráan nɯŋ
At that place there is a restaurant.
7. ráantàtphǒm dii thǐinân mii ráantàtphǒm dii jùu ráan nɯŋ
There is a good barber shop there.
8. lǎaj ráan thǐinân mii ráantàtphǒm diidi jùu lǎaj ráan
There are many good barber shops there.

c) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

kháw khít khâachâw jaŋŋaj

How do they figure the rent?

1. thâwràj

kháw khít khâachâw thâwràj

How much do they charge for the rent?

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. dyan la thâwràj khâw khít khâachâw dyan la thâwra
How much do they charge per month
for the rent?
3. dyan la kii phan khâw khít khâachâw dyan la kii phan bàat
bàat How many thousands a month do they
charge for rent?
4. pii la thâwràj khâw khít khâachâw pii la thâwràj
How much a year do they charge for
the rent?
5. aathít la kii khâw khít khâachâw aathít la kii bàat
bàat How many baht a week do they charge
for rent?

d) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. bân nán pen bân màj That house is a new house.
2. krunthêep pen myan jàj Bangkok is a big city.
3. .thîi myanṭhaj, éppên pen khṣon Apples are expensive in
phæṅ Thailand
4. myanṭhaj pen myan rón Thailand is a hot country.
5. sawidden pen myan năaw Sweden is a cold country.
6. sukḥothaj pen myanlŭan kàw Sukhothai is the old capitol.

e) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khâw pen khon dii He's a nice person.
2. khâw pen khon sanùk He's an enjoyable person.
3. khâw pen khon kèn He's a competent person.
4. khâw pen khon màj He's a newcomer.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 7. rew dii | nice and fast |
| 8. lék dii | nice and small |
| 9. jàj dii | nice and large |
| 10. sanùk dii | nice and amusing |

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. rón (kəən) paj | too hot |
| 2. nǎaw (kəən) paj | too cold |
| 3. klaj (kəən) paj | too far |
| 4. rew (kəən) paj | too fast |
| 5. cháa (kəən) paj | too slow |
| 6. lék (kəən) paj | too small |
| 7. jàj (kəən) paj | too big |
| 8. klâj (kəən) paj | too close |

i) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm chǎp
He drives fast. I like that.

2. kháw khàp rót rew.phǒm mâj chǎp
He drives fast. I don't
like that.

3. kháw phûut cháa.phǒm chǎp
He speaks slowly. I like
that.

4. bâan khun jùu klâj talàat
phǒm chǎp
Your house is near the market.
I like that.

Pattern 2

- kháw khàp rót rew dii
He drives nice and fast.

- kháw khàp rót rew paj
He drives too fast.

- kháw phûut cháa dii
He speaks nice and slow.

- bâankhun jùu klâj talàat dii
Your house is nice and
close to the market.

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. bân khun jùu klâj talàat bân khun jùu klâj talàat
phôm mâj chôp kæen paj
Your house is near the Your house is too close to
market. I don't like that. the market.
6. bân lănnán jàj.phôm chôp bân lănnán jàj dii
That house is big. That house is nice and big.
I like that.

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khanàat kamlan phoo dii, mâj lék mâj jàj kæen paj
It's the right size, not too small and not too large.
2. aakàat kamlan phoo dii, mâj rón mâj năaw kæen paj
The weather is just right, not too warm and not too cold.
3. kháw phûut kamlan phoo dii, mâj rew mâj cháa kæen paj
He speaks at just the right speed, not too fast and not too slow.
4. raakhaa kamlan phoo dii, mâj phsɛŋ mâj thùuk kæen paj
The price is just right, not too expensive and not too cheap.
5. raw maa thŷŋ kamlan phoodii, mâj rew mâj cháa
We arrived at just the right time, not too early and not too late.

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>bâan</u> nâajùu	The house is nice to live in.
1. hooten	<u>hooten</u> nâajùu	The hotel is nice to live in.
2. krunthêep	<u>krunthêep</u> nâajùu	Bangkok is nice to live in.
3. myan̄thaj	<u>myan̄thaj</u> nâajùu	Thailand is nice to live in.
4. apháatmênt	<u>apháatmênt</u> nâajùu	The apartment is nice to live in.
5. tàan̄caṇwàt	<u>tàan̄caṇwàt</u> nâajùu	Up country (Thailand) is nice to live in.

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (nâa+Verb as Modifier)

1. bâan <u>nâajùu</u>	The house is nice (to live in)
2. aahãan <u>nâathaan</u>	The food looks delicious.
3. rôt khannán <u>nâakhàp</u>	That car is nice to drive.
4. nánsýy lêm̄nán <u>nâaàan</u>	That book is interesting to read.
5. khõṇ th̄fin̄fi <u>nâasýy</u>	Things here are nice to buy.
6. nǎṇ r̄yāṇn̄fi <u>nâaduu</u>	This movie is nice to see.
7. bâan lǎṇnán khâachâw mâj ph̄ɛṇ, <u>nâachâw</u>	That house is not too expensive. It's nice to rent.
8. pàakkaṇ dâam̄n̄fi <u>nâacháj</u>	This pen is nice to use.
9. nákr̄ian khonnán <u>nâasõṇ</u>	That student is nice to teach.
10. nánsýy lêm̄n̄fi <u>nâasõṇcaj</u>	That book is interesting.

THAI BASIC COURSE

11. lékchêe (khambanjaaj) nâafan The lecture is interesting.
 12. dèk khonnán nâarák The child is lovable (cute, etc.)

m) Transformation Drill

- | | <u>Pattern 1</u> | <u>Pattern 2</u> | |
|----|--|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. | bâanlăŋnán sŭaj
phǒm jàak jùu | bâan lăŋnán nâajùu | That house is cozy. |
| 2. | rót khanníi dii
phǒm jàak khàp | rót khanníi nâakhàp | That car is nice to drive. |
| 3. | khǒŋ thîiníi thùukdii
phǒm jàak sýy | khǒŋ thîiníi nâasýy | Things here are good buys. |
| 4. | bâan lăŋnán dii
phǒm jàak chăw | bâan lăŋnán nâachăw | That is a good house to rent. |
| 5. | nákrian khonnán kèn
phǒm jàak sǒn | nákrian khonnán nâasǒn | That student is nice to teach. |
| 6. | nânsýy lênníi dii
phǒm jàak àan | nânsýy lêm níi nâaàan | That is a readable book. |
| 7. | nânsýy lêmníi dii
phǒm sǒncaj | nânsýy lêmníi nâasǒncaj | That book is interesting. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. dèk khonnán dii
 thúkkhon rák kháw dèk khonnán nâarák That child is loveable.
 (cute, etc.)

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. sǒŋ kwàa	bâan lǎŋnán jùu hàan càak thanǒn jàj kii kiloo How many kilometers is that house from the main street?	sǒŋ kiloo kwàa More than two.
2. raaw 2 rǎy 3	sathǎanii rótfaj jùu hàan càak (thfi) nfi kii kiloo How many kilometers is the railroad station from here?	raaw sǒŋ rý sǎam kiloo About 2 or 3.
3. raaw 150	hǔahĩn jùu hàan càak krunthêep kii kiloo How far is Huahin from Bangkok?	raaw róŋj hâasíp kiloo About 150 kilometers.
4. 692	ubon jùu hàan càak krunthêep kii kiloo How far is Ubon from Bangkok?	hòk róŋj kâawsíp sǒŋ kiloo About 692 kilometers.
5. 1129	sǒŋkhlǎa jùu hàan càak krunthêep kii kiloo How far is Songkla from Bangkok?	nỳn phan nỳn róŋj jfiisíp kâaw kiloo 1129 kilometers.

THAI BASIC COURSE

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Use of tittò)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. kháw maa thurá araj Why did he come?</p>	<p>kháw maa tittò rýaᅇ bāanchāw He came to inquire about the house for rent.</p>
<p>2. kháw khuan ca tittò kàp khraᅇj Who should he contact?</p>	<p>kháw khuan ca tittò kàp cāwnāathī khonnán He should contact that official.</p>
<p>3. phǒm ca tittò kàp kháw dāᅇj jaᅇᅇaj How can I get in touch with him?</p>	<p>tittò phāan naajᅇā sikhraᅇp Contact (him) through the agent.</p>
<p>4. phǒm ca tittò kàp kháw dāᅇj jaᅇᅇaj How can I get in touch with him?</p>	<p>tittò phāan cāwnāathī sikhraᅇp Through the man in charge.</p>
<p>5. phǒm ca tittò kàp khun dāᅇj jaᅇᅇaj How do I get in touch with you?</p>	<p>nīikhraᅇp, bæthoorasàp phǒm Here is my phone number.</p>
<p>6. khun phǒp kháw bāaᅇ rýplāaw Have you seen him lately?</p>	<p>plāawkhraᅇp, phǒm māᅇj dāᅇj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léᅇw No, I've been out of touch with him for a long time.</p>
<p>7. khun dāᅇj còtmāᅇj càak kháw bāaᅇ rýplāaw Have you got any letters from him?</p>	<p>plāaw khraᅇp, phǒm māᅇj dāᅇj tittò kàp kháw maa naan léᅇw No, I haven't been in touch with him for a long time.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. thoo paj thǎam | call and ask |
| 2. thoo paj bòok | call and tell |
| 3. thoo paj chuan | call and invite |
| 4. thoo paj rǎak | call and summon |
| 5. thoo paj hǎa | call |
| 6. thoo paj thǎy | call |

q) Transformation Drill (Combine patterns 1 and 2 to form pattern 3.)

Patterns 1 and 2

Pattern 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. a. phǒm thoo paj hǎa kháw | phǒm thoo paj thǎam kháw wâa |
| b. phǒm thǎam kháw wâa kháw
ca paj máj | kháw ca paj máj |
| I called him.
I asked him whether he
was going. | I called and asked if he
was going. |
| 2. a. phǒm thoo paj hǎa kháw | phǒm thoo paj bòok kháw wâa |
| b. phǒm bòok kháw wâa phǒm
paj máj dâj | phǒm paj máj dâj |
| I called him.
I told him I couldn't go. | I called and told him
that I couldn't go. |
| 3. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw | phǒm ca thoo paj chuan kháw |
| b. phǒm ca chuan kháw paj
sýy khǒon | paj sýy khǒon |
| I will call him. I will
ask him to go shopping
with me. | I will call and ask him
to go shopping with me. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw phǒm ca thoo paj chuan kháw
 b. phǒm ca chuan kháw paj paj thǎaw
 thǎaw
 I will call him. I will I will call and invite
 invite him to go out (for him to go out (for fun).
 fun).
5. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw phǒm ca thoo paj bòok hǎj kháw
 b. phǒm ca bòok hǎj kháw maa maa thǎinǎi
 thǎinǎi
 I will call him. I will I will call and tell him
 tell him to come over. to come over.
6. a. phǒm ca thoo paj hǎa kháw phǒm ca thoo paj thǎam (kháw)
 b. phǒm ca thǎam kháw rǎan rǎan bâanchǎw
 bâanchǎw
 I will call him. I will I will call and ask him
 ask him about the house about the house for rent.
 for rent.
7. a. phǒm thoo paj thǎi bǎorisàt phǒm thoo paj rǎak thǎeksǎi
 thǎeksǎi
 b. phǒm rǎak thǎeksǎi
 I called the taxi company. I called for a cab.
 I asked for a cab.
8. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm kháw thoo maa thǎam wǎa phǒm
 b. kháw thǎam phǒm wǎa phǒm ca paj mǎaràj
 ca paj mǎaràj
 He called me. He asked He called and asked when
 me when I was leaving. I was leaving.

THAI BASIC COURSE

9. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm kháw thoo maa bòok (phǒm) wâa
b. kháw bòok phǒm wâa kháw kháw mâj sabaaj
 mâj sabaaj
 He called me. He told He called and told me
 me he was sick. that he was sick.
10. a. kháw thoo maa hǎa phǒm kháw thoo maa chuan phǒm paj
b. kháw chuan phǒm paj phátthajaa
 phátthajaa
 He called me. He invited He called and invited me
 me to go to Pataya. to go to Pataya.

32.4 EXERCISES

1. Ask someone if he has rented a house yet. He indicates he hasn't.
2. Ask if there are any houses for rent in his street. He says there are some.
3. Find out the name of someone's landlord.
4. Find out how much the rent is.
5. Comment on the looks of various buildings in the neighborhood. Indicate that they look nice.
6. Discuss how far apart various buildings in the neighborhood are.
7. Ask someone how you get in touch with someone else. He says call him directly.
8. Ask someone if the house he is living in is big enough for a small family like his.
9. Find out how much the rent is for different houses and apartments, how many hundreds, thousands, etc. per week, month, year.

THAI BASIC COURSE

10. Discuss the weather in various seasons at various places.
11. Discuss the manner in which various activities are done and whether you like the way it's done.
12. Indicate that something is just right, not too... or too...
13. Ask questions and answer them about places that are nice to live in, things that are nice to eat, etc.
14. Discuss various telephone calls; who made them to whom for what purpose and at what time.

32.5 VOCABULARY

éepên (lûuk, phǎn, baj)	apple
câwkhǎon	owner
câwnâathîi (khon)	the man in charge, official
doojtron	directly
hàan	to be far apart, to be separate, to be distant
kamlan phoodii	just right
kæen paj	too..., in excess
khâachâw	the rent
khambanjaa (khôo)	lecture
khanàat	size
khít janṇaj	how is it figured (what is included in the calculations)
kiloo	kilometer
lékchêe (khôo)	lecture
lûuknǎon (khon)	subordinate (employee)
maa thǎn	to arrive (towards speaker)
paj thǎn	to arrive (away from speaker)

THAI BASIC COURSE

mii.... jùu	has, have, is, are in possession of, is are in existence, is, are to be found
nâa	worthy of, leading to, or - able, It combines with other verbs to form verb compounds
nâa-àan	interesting to read
nâabỳa	boring
nâacháj	nice to use
nâachâw	nice to rent
nâaduu	interesting to look at
nâafaŋ	interesting to listen to
nâajùu	to be cozy, livable
nâakhàp	nice to drive
nâarák	lovable, cute
nâasýy	nice to buy
nâasǒncaj	interesting
nâasǒn	nice to teach
nâathan	to look delicious
naajnâa (khon)	agent
pàak (pàak)	mouth, beak, lips, opening
pàaksooj	the entrance into a lane
raaj la-iat	details
rák	to love
sooj	lane, narrow street
tittòo / kàp	to contact or get in touch with
/ kan	someone
/ ka-	
thoo (rasàp)	to telephone, to call
.... (rasàp) paj	
.... (rasàp) maa	

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-THREE

33.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (3)

- A: phǒm dâj jin wâa khun mi bân hâj châw, châj máj khráp I heard you had a house to rent, is that true?
- B: khâ, mi jùu lăaj lăj . khun tōṅkaan bèep năj. chán diaw, sǒṅ chán rý chán khrýṅ Yes, I have several. What kind do you want? One story, two story, or one and a half story.
- A: phǒm jàak dâj bân thîi mi hōṅnōon sǎam hōṅ léew kō mi múnluat thán lăj ca pen sǒṅ chán rý chán khrýṅ kō dâj I want a house with 3 bedrooms and completely screened in. Either two story or one and a half story is O.K.
- B: khun chōp bân tỳk rý máaj khá You want a masonry house or a wooden house?
- A: araj kōdâj khráp Either is O.K.
- B: dichán mi bân sǒṅ chán khrýṅ tỳk khrýṅ máaj jùu lăj nṅ pen bân bèep samǎj màj khâaṅṅōok thaa sǐi khǎaw òon, khâaṅṅaj sǐi khǎaw I have a two story house half masonry and half wood.
- chán bon mi hōṅnōon sǎam hōṅ, hōṅnám nṅ hōṅ It's a modern style house. Outside it's light green; inside it's white.
- chán lâaṅ mi hōṅrâpkhèek, hōṅkhrua, hōṅaahǎan ka Upstairs there are 3 bedrooms and one bath.
- hōṅnám ìik hōṅ nṅ Downstairs there is a living room, kitchen, dining room, and another bathroom.

THAI BASIC COURSE

léswkô, lǎn bâan mii ryan
khoncháj ka hôŋkèpkhǒŋ
jùu tàan hàak

And in the back of the
house there are separate
servant quarters and
storage space.

A: mii roonróot máj khráp

Is there a carport?

B: mii khâ

Yes, there is.

33.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) When kô dâj follows Noun+nǎj, it indicates that either of two or more of the options is acceptable.

A: phǒm khuan ca paj bâan
khun weelaa nǎj

What time of day should I go
to your house?

B. weelaa nǎj kô dâj = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{weelaa cháaw } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa thǎan } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa klaan̄khyyn } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{weelaa } \underline{dâj} \end{array} \right.$

'Morning is O.K.'

'Noon is O.K.'

'Nighttime is O.K.'

....

'Any time is all right.'

A: raw ca kin khâaw thǎi ráan
nǎj kan

'Which restaurant shall
we eat at?'

B: ráan nǎj kô dâj = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ráan ní } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{ráan nán } \underline{dâj} \\ \text{ráan nóon } \underline{dâj} \end{array} \right.$

'This restaurant is O.K.'

'That restaurant is O.K.'

'The restaurant over there
is O.K.'

'Any one is all right?'

- b) jàak and jàak dâj both mean 'want' or 'would like', but they are used differently.

THAI BASIC COURSE

jàak is usually followed by a Verb Phrase and only rarely by a Noun Phrase, whereas, jàak dâj is normally followed by a Noun Phrase. Observe the following examples:

- | | <u>Subject + Verb</u> | + | <u>Complement (Verb Phrase)</u> |
|-----|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| (1) | phǒm jàak | | paj |
| | I want to | | go |
| (2) | phom <u>jàak</u> | | paj jùu tàançanwàt |
| | I want to | | go and live in the provinces. |

- | | <u>Subject + Verb</u> | + | <u>Complement (Noun Phrase)</u> |
|-----|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| (1) | phǒm jàak dâj | | bâan |
| | I want | | a house. |
| (2) | phǒm <u>jàak dâj</u> | | bâan thîi miì sǎoŋ hōŋnooŋ |
| | I want | | a house with two bedrooms. |

c) Following are two of the ways that Noun Compounds may be formed in Thai:

(1) Noun Compound: Noun + Verb Phrase

hōŋrâpkhèsk 'living room': hōŋ 'room' + râp
'receive' + khèsk 'guest'

hōŋnooŋ 'bedroom': hōŋ + nooŋ 'sleep'

hōŋkèpkhǎoŋ 'storeroom': hōŋ + kèp 'store' + khǎoŋ
'things'

hōŋthaankhâaw 'dining room': hōŋ + thaan 'eat' +
khâaw 'rice'

(2) Noun Compound: Noun + Noun

hōŋaahǎan 'dining room': hōŋ + aahǎan 'food'

(hōŋ) khrua 'kitchen': hōŋ + khrua 'kitchen'

THAI BASIC COURSE

roonrót 'carport': roon 'building'+rót 'vehicle'
 sǔan dòokmáaj 'flower garden': sǔan 'garden'
 dòokmáaj 'flower'
 sanǎam (jâa) 'lawn, yard': sanǎam 'yard, field' +
 jâa 'grass'

Observe the following compounds with bèep 'model, type, style':

bâan bèep thaj	a Thai style house
bâan bèep faràn	a Western style house
bâan bèep samǎj màj	a new style house
bâan bèep than samǎj	a modern style house
bâan bèep chán diaw	a one story house
bâan bèep sǒon chán	a two story house
bâan bèep chánkrÿn	a storey and a half house

33.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

I. The following words and phrases are used with houses:

mún	'mosquito net'
múnlûat	'screen' (for window, etc.)
mi } tít }	múnlûat 'to be screened'
mi múnlûat thán lǎn	'to be completely screened'

2. The following are some of the color words in Thai:

<u>Basic color</u>		<u>Light color</u>	<u>Dark color</u>
<u>green</u>	sǐi khǎaw	sǐi khǎaw òon	sǐi khǎaw kèe
<u>yellow</u>	sǐi lýan	sǐi lýan òon	sǐi lýan kèe
<u>red</u>	sǐi dseej	sǐi dseej òon	sǐi dseej kèe
<u>brown</u>	sǐi námtaan	sǐi námtaan òon	sǐi námtaan kèe

THAI BASIC COURSE

blue	sǐi námŋəən	sǐi fáa	sǐi námŋəən khēm
<u>navy blue</u>	sǐi kromathâa		krommathâa
<u>white</u>	sǐi khǎaw	... ..	... ..
<u>black</u>	sǐi dam	... ..	... ..

33.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun chōp bâan tỳk rý bâan máaj Do you like stucco houses or wood houses?	araj kōdâj Either.
2. khun chōp bâan bèep nǎj What kind of house do you prefer?	bèep nǎj kōdâj Any kind.
3. khun jàak jùu thfinǎj Where would you like to live?	thfinǎj kōdâj Anywhere.
4. khun jàak pen araj (mǎo, thahǎan, etc) What would you like to be? (doctor, etc.)	pen araj kōdâj (Any occupation) is fine.
5. raw ca paj kan weelaa nǎj What time are we going?	weelaa nǎj kōdâj Any time is all right.
6. chalǎem pen chýy phûuchaaaj rý phûujǐn Is 'Chalerm' a man's name or a woman's name?	chýy phûuchaaaj kōdâj chýy phûujǐn kōdâj It could be either a man's name or a woman's name.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ca pen <u>sǒŋ chán rý chán diaw</u> kǒdâj Either a two story or one story one is O.K.
1. paj, mâj paj	ca <u>paj rý mâj paj</u> kǒdâj It doesn't matter whether we go or not.
2. tham dǎawníi, ìik sák pradǎaw	ca <u>tham dǎawníi rý ìik sák pradǎaw</u> kǒdâj It doesn't make any difference whether you do it now or a little later.
3. hâj phǒm khǒoj jùu thǎiníi, thǎinóon	ca <u>hâj phǒm khǒoj jùu thǎiníi rý thǎinóon</u> kǒdâj It's all right with me whether you have me wait here or there.
4. ca pen bâan tỳk, bâan máaj	ca <u>pen bâan tỳk rý bâanmáaj</u> kǒdâj Either a stucco or wooden house is O.K.
5. khon thaj, khon tàanchâat	ca <u>pen khon thaj rý khon tàanchâat</u> kǒdâj It could be either a Thai or a foreigner.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan thîi mii hǒnnoon</u> <u>sǎam hǒn</u> I want a house with three bedrooms.
1. <u>bâan thîi mii múnluat</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan thîi mii múnluat</u> I want a house that is screened.
2. <u>bâan sǒn chán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan sǒn chán</u> I want a two story house.
3. <u>bâan bèep thaj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>bâan bèep thaj</u> I want a Thai style house.
4. <u>rót màj</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>rót màj</u> I want a new car.
5. <u>nánsǎy lêm nán</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>nánsǎy lêm nán</u> I want that book.
6. <u>phǎenthîi prathêet thaj l phèn</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>phǎenthîi prathêet thaj</u> <u>nỳn phèn</u> I want a map of Thailand.
7. <u>nɛn mâak mâak</u>	phǒm jàak dâj <u>nɛn mâak mâak</u> I want (to get) a lot of money.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. fáa	bâan khun (thaa) sǐi araj What color is your house?	sǐi fáa khráp Light blue.
2. dam	rót khan màj khǒŋ khun sǐi araj What color is your new car?	sǐi dam khráp Black.
3. khǎaw	khâaŋŋôok bâan khun thaa sǐi araj What color is your house on the outside?	sǐi khǎaw khráp White.
4. lǎaŋ òn	sǎa khǒŋ kháw sǐi araj What color is his coat?	sǐi lǎaŋ òn khráp Light yellow..
5. námtaan kèe	rǒŋtháw khûu nán sǐi araj What color is that pair of shoes?	sǐi námtaan kèe khráp Dark brown.
6. e)	Transformation Drill (Form pattern 3 from Patterns 1 and 2.)	

Pattern 1 and 2

1. bâan kháw sǐi khǎaw
bâan phǒm sǐi khǎaw òn
His house is green.
My house is light green.

Pattern 3

- bâan kháw sǐi kèe kwàa bâan
phǒm
His house is a darker color than mine.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. kâwîi hôn̄ khun praphâat
sǐi lǎn̄kèe
The chairs in Prapas'
room are dark yellow.
- kâwîi hôn̄ khun prasèet sǐi
lǎn̄dòn
The chairs in Prasert's
room are light yellow.
- kâwîi hôn̄ khun praphâat sǐi
kèe kwàa kâwîi hôn̄ khun
prasèet
The chairs in Prapas'
room are of darker color
than those in Prasert's
room.
3. rôt khan nán sǐi dseŋ
rôt khanníi sǐi dseŋ òn
That car is red; this
car is light red.
- rôt khan nán sǐi kèe kwàa
rôt khan níi
That car is darker colored
than this one.
4. s̄ya chút nán sǐi nám̄neen
s̄ya chút níi sǐi faá
That suit is blue.
This suit is light blue.
- s̄ya chút nán kèe kwàa s̄ya
chút níi
That suit is darker than
this one.
5. roon̄tháw khûu nán sǐi nám̄taan
kèe
roon̄tháw khûu níi sǐi nám̄taan
òn
That pair of shoes is
dark brown.
This pair of shoes is
light brown.
- roon̄tháw khûu nán sǐi kèe
kwàa roon̄tháw khûu níi
That pair of shoes is
darker in color than
this pair.
6. phôm chòp sǐi kromathâa
kháw chòp sǐi fáa
I like navy blue.
He likes light blue.
- phôm chòp sǐi kèe kwàa
kháw
I like darker colors
than he.

Repeat this drill reversing subject and complement and using
òn kwàa in place of kèe kwàa.

f) Expansion Drill

1. mii bân

mii bân wân

mii bân wân hâj châw

mii bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw

mii bân bèsp thaj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

mii bân bèsp thaj chán diaw than samǎj wân hâj châw jùu

lǎj nɔj

2. phǒm jàak dâj bân

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mii

múnlúat

phǒm jàak dâj bân tỳk thaa sǐi khǎaw òon thǐi mii

múnlúat thánlǎj

3. kháw chǒp bân

kháw chǒp bân máaj

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mii

hǒnám

kháw chǒp bân máaj bèsp faràn chán diaw thǐi mii

hǒnám bèsp than samǎj

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. pen bâan
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛn
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw sǒn chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛn,
khâanǎaj sǐi khǎaw
pen bâan bèep samǎj kàw 2 chán khâanǎok thaa sǐi dɛn,
khâanǎaj sǐi khǎaw lǎn nɔn

g) Response Drill (Use kô dâj in the response.)

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khun jàak jùu krunthêep rý tàanǎawát	thǐnǎj kô dâj
2. wannǐi raw ca paj thaan khâaw thǐnǎj dii	thǐnǎj kô dâj
3. khun jàak hâj lûuk khun rian araj	araj kô dâj
4. khun ca hâj phǒm paj tɔon nǎj	tɔon nǎj kô dâj
5. phǒm khuan ca hâj araj kháw dii	araj kô dâj
6. ñaan níi ca tɔon sèt mýaraj	mýaraj kô dâj
7. khun ca phûut ka khraj	khraj kô dâj
8. khun jàak hâj khraj paj dúaaj	khraj kô dâj

33.4 EXERCISES

- a) Find out if someone has a house to rent. He indicates that he has several, and asks you if you want a single story house. You say you want a two story house.
- b) Tell someone that you have a masonry house that is completely screened in. Ask him if he wants to rent it. He says he doesn't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- c) Ask someone if he has a half masonry and half wood house to rent. He says he has two. You ask him where they are. He says they are on Sukhumwit Lane.
- d) Ask the teacher whether most Thais live in modern style houses or old style, Thai or foreign.
- e) Tell someone you have a house to rent. He asks you what color it is. You say it's white on the outside and light green on the inside.
- f) Describe the house you are now living in terms of:
1) number of storeys 2) material it is made out of,
3) the color it is painted inside and out, 4) what rooms it has and whether they are upstairs or down,
5) whether it has servants' quarters, storage space, a carport, flower garden, and a yard.
- g) Various students ask about the colors of various objects in the classroom; other students respond with the correct answers.
- h) One student asks another questions of the following kind: 'Do you like or?' to which the response 'Any (kind, thing, where, etc.)' is given.
- i) One student asks another what kind of... he wants. The second responds with a description of the kind he wants.

33.5 VOCABULARY

òon	light (color)
bâan máaj (lǎŋ)	a wooden house
bâan týk (lǎŋ)	a stucco home, brick house (building)
bèsp	model, type, style
chaan	patio, porch without a roof
chalǎŋ (chalǎŋ)	terrace, balcony, porch
chánbon	upstairs
chándiaw	one story

THAI BASIC COURSE

chánkhrŷŋ	one and a half storey
chánlâaŋ	downstairs
(sŷi) dam	black
(sŷi) dɛɛŋ	red
dâjjiŋ	to hear
dòokmáaj (dòok)	flowers
fáa (sŷi fáa)	sky, sky blue
hônnaahǎan (hôn)	dining room
hônkèpkhǎon (hôn)	storage, space, storage room
hônkhrua (hôn)	kitchen
hônám (hôn)	bathroom, restroom
hônrapkhèek (hôn)	a living room
jâa	grass
kèɛ	dark (color)
khǎaw	white
khŷaw	green
khŷawdòon	light green
khûu	pair
kromathâa	navy blue, dark blue
lŷaŋ	yellow
máaj (an, phèɛn)	wood, stick
mún (lǎŋ)	mosquito net
múnlûat	screen (for window etc.)
(sŷi) námŋeən	blue
(sŷi) námtaan	sugar, brown (as color)
rabiaŋ	corridor
roonróat (roon)	garage
roontháw (khûu, khâaŋ)	shoes (pair; one of a pair)
ryan (lǎŋ)	house (in older Thai)

THAI BASIC COURSE

ryankhoncháj (lǎŋ)	servants' quarters
samǎj	time, period, era, age, reign
samǎj màj	modern
sanǎam (jâa)	lawn, yard
sanǎam (sanǎam)	yard, field, (golf) course
sǐi (sǐi)	color
sǒŋchán	two story
sǔan (sǔan)	garden
sǔan dǒokmáaj	flower garden
(jùu) tàaŋhàak	to be separate
thaa (sǐi)	to paint, smear, spread (on)
than samǎj	modern, up-to-date
tìt (múnlûat)	to be screened
tônkaan	to want, need

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

34.0 BASIC DIALOG: Renting a House (4)

- A: pen jaŋŋaj m̄aŋ khá b̄aŋ
l̄aŋ ní
khun ch̄oŋ máj
- B: sabaaj m̄aak khráp, b̄oŋriween
k̄o kw̄aŋ khw̄aŋ dii
kh̄oŋth̄oŋ, khun khít kh̄aach̄aw
jaŋŋaj khráp
- A: dyan la h̄aaphan bàat.m̄aj
ruam kh̄aanám, kh̄aafaj,
kh̄aakéss, lé kh̄aathoorasàp
ph̄uuch̄aw t̄oŋ s̄ya eŋ
- B: dyan la h̄aaphan chiaw r̄e khráp
lót b̄aŋ d̄aj máj khráp
- A: h̄aaphan m̄aj ph̄eŋ r̄okh̄a
phr̄ó mi kh̄r̄yaŋryan phr̄óm
- B: mi araj b̄aŋ khráp
- A: mi kh̄róp th̄uk j̄aŋ:
chút rápkh̄èek, chút thaankh̄aaw,
tiaŋ, t̄u, tawkéss, t̄uŋjen lé
phátlom . kh̄aat t̄e kh̄r̄yaŋ
pr̄apaak̄aat
- How is this house?
- Do you like it?
- Very nice. The compound is also nice and large.
- Excuse me, how much is the rent?
- 5000 baht a month. Not including water, electricity, gas, and telephone.
- The tenant has to pay those himself.
- Five thousand baht!?
Could you come down some?
- 5,000 is not too expensive since it's furnished.
- What (furnishings) are there?
- Everything: living room furniture, a dining set, beds, chests of drawers, a gas stove, a refrigerator, and electric fans. The only thing it doesn't have is air conditioning.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>A: khun tŏŋ aw maa een tɛɛ
raw tɪttŏŋ hŏj frii</p> | <p>You have to bring your own.
But we'll have it installed
for you free.</p> |
| <p>B: tŏŋ tham sŏnjaachŏw kŏi
pii khráp</p> | <p>How long a lease is
required?</p> |
| <p>A: nŏŋ pii khà
càaj nŏn lŭanŏa jaanŏoj
sŏam dyan
khŏthŏot, khun ca jáaj maa
jŭu mŏjaraj khá</p> | <p>One year.
(Pay) 3 months rent in
advance.
Excuse me, when would you
like to move in?</p> |
| <p>B: phŏm khŏo pryksŏa phanrajaa
phŏm kŏon
thŏa tŏkloŋ, ca jáaj maa
dyan nŏa</p> | <p>I'd like to talk it over
with my wife first.
If we take it, we'll move
in next month.</p> |

34.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) sŏa, òok, and càaj

sŏa (khŏa) means 'to pay for something (a bill, etc.)'
as an obligation for services rendered.

òok (nŏn) means 'to pay for something, put up the
money for something, or to stand good for something.'

càaj (nŏn) means 'to pay out, spend, disburse money'.
It refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a
specific occasion.

The example below illustrates the usage of sŏa, òok,
and càaj:

khun cŏon kàp khun cim chŏw bàn jŭu dŭajkan. kháw sŏa
khŏachŏw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cŏon òok 2000 bàat .
khun cim òok 2000 bàat. kháw càaj khŏachŏwbân dyan
la khrán

THAI BASIC COURSE

John and Jim rent a house. The cost of the rent is 4000 baht a month. John pays out 2000 and Jim pays out 2000. They make the rent payment once a month.

- b) khróp means 'to be complete' or 'to include all the members of a limited set of items'. Its opposite is khàat 'to be lacking, missing'. khróp like sèt usually occurs as a completive verb, as in

kháw dâj nánsýy khróp thúk lêm He got all the books.
(nánsýy mi jùu 20 lêm. kháw (There were 20 books.
dâj nánsýy 20 lêm.) He got 20.)

However, it can occur independently, as in

A: nánsýy khróp máj Are all the books here?
B: mâj khróp, khàat paj sǒn No, two are missing.
lêm

- c) When chiaw occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.

hâaphan bàat chiaw rǎ Five thousand baht!?
(That's quite a lot of money.)

34.2 VOCABULARY NOTES (The following are some of the compounds with khâa 'cost, price, fee, value' as the head noun:)

Noun: Noun+Noun

khâafaj (fáa) 'electric bill': khâa+faj (fáa) 'electricity'

khâanám 'water bill': khâa+nám 'water'

khâakéss 'gas bill': khâa+késs 'gas'

khâarót 'carfare': khâa+rót 'car, vehicle'

khâa aahǎan 'food (on a bill)': khâa+aahǎan 'food'

khâamǎo 'doctor bill': khâa+mǎo 'doctor'

THAI BASIC COURSE

Noun: Noun+Verb Phrase

khâacâaŋ 'wage': khâa+câaŋ 'hire'

khâachâw 'rent': khâa+châw 'rent'

khâakin 'food': khâa+kin 'eat'

khâajùu 'lodging': khâa+jùu 'reside'

khâathoorasàp 'phone bill': khâa+thoorasàp 'telephone'

khâadænthaaŋ 'travel expenses': khâa+dænthaaŋ 'travel'

34.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. khâanám, mâj	ruam <u>khâanám</u> máj Does it include the water bill?	mâj ruam khráp No, it doesn't.
2. khâakéss	ruam <u>khâakéss</u> máj Does it include the gas bill?	ruam khráp Yes, it does.
3. khâafaj, mâj	ruam <u>khâafaj</u> máj Does it include the electric bill?	mâj ruam khráp No, it doesn't.
4. khâathoorasàp	ruam <u>khâathoorasàp</u> máj Does it include the phone bill?	ruam khráp Yes, it does.

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	tôn sǎa <u>khâanám</u> een You have to pay the water bill yourself.
1. khâacâaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâacâaŋ</u> een You have to pay the wages yourself.
2. khâamǎo	tôn sǎa <u>khâamǎo</u> een You have to pay the doctor bill yourself.
3. khâadænthaaŋ	tôn sǎa <u>khâadænthaaŋ</u> een You have to pay travel expenses yourself.
4. khâajùu	ttôn sǎa <u>khâajùu</u> een You have to pay for lodging yourself.

c) Transformation Drill (Change from Pattern 1 to Pattern 2.)

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. kháw chǎw bâan dyan la sǎam phan bàat He rents the house for 3000 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâa chǎwbâan dyan la 3000 bàat He pays 3000 baht a month for rent.
2. kháw câaŋ khoncháŋ dyan la hâa rǎoŋ bàat He hires a servant for 500 baht a month.	kháw sǎa khâacâaŋ khoncháŋ dyan la 500 bàat He pays 500 baht a month for a servant.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. kháw cháj fajfáa dyan la
sìi róoj bàat
He uses 400 baht worth of
electricity per month. | kháw sǎa khâafajfáa dyan la
sìi róoj bàat
He pays a 400 baht electric
bill every month. |
| 4. kháw cháj kées dyan la róoj
bàat
He uses 100 baht worth
of gas per month. | kháw sǎa khâakées dyan la
róoj bàat
He pays a 100 baht monthly
gas bill. |
| 5. kháw sýy aahǎan dyan la
phan bàat
He buys 1000 baht worth
of food per month. | kháw sǎa khâa aahǎan dyan
la phan bàat
He pays 1000 baht a month
for food. |
| 6. kháw hâj ñen khonkhàp thékssǐi
sǐp bàat
He gave the taxi driver
ten baht. | kháw sǎa khâa thékssǐi sǐp
bàat
He paid ten baht for
a taxi. |

d) Sentence Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâachâwbâan
eeñ. <u>thaañrâatchakaan òok hâj</u>
We don't have to pay the
rent. | raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâachâwbâan
eeñ. <u>thaañrâatchakaan òok hâj</u>
We don't have to pay the
rent. The government
pays for us. |
| 2. raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâadænthaañ
eeñ
We don't have to pay for
travel expenses. | raw mâj tǎn sǎa khâadænthaañ
eeñ. <u>thaañrâatchakaan òok hâj</u>
We don't have to pay for
travel expenses. The
government pays for us. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>3. raw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâamǎo een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay
doctor bills.</p> | <p>raw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâamǎo een.
<u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">We don't have to pay doctor
bills. The government pays
for us.</p> |
| <p>4. kháw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâalâwrian
khǎoŋ lŭuk een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay
for his children's
schooling.</p> | <p>kháw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâalâwrian
khǎoŋ lŭuk een. <u>thaaŋrâatchakaan</u>
<u>òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for
his children's schooling.
The government pays for him.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâarót een</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay
for transportation.</p> | <p>kháw mâj tŏŋ sĭa khâarót een
<u>thaaŋrâatchakaan òok hâj</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He doesn't have to pay for
carfare. The government
pays for him.</p> |

e) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. 2	khun càaj khâachâwbâan wanthĭi thâwraj On what day of the month do you pay the rent?	wanthĭi sǎoŋ khráp The second.
2. 15	khun càaj khâakées wanthĭi thâwraj On what day of the month do you pay the gas bill?	wanthĭi 15 khráp The fifteenth.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|---------------------|--|---|
| 3. | 22 | khun càaj khâanám wan
thâwraj

What day do you pay the
water bill on? | wanthîi 22 khráp

The twenty second. |
| 4. | sùtháaj | khun càaj khâathoorasàp
wanthîi thâwraj

What day do you pay the
telephone bill on? | wan sùtháaj khráp

The last day. |
| 5. | dyan la
2 khránj | khun càaj khâacâan khoncháj
dyan la kîi khránj

How many times a month
do you pay your servants? | dyan la 2 khránj
khráp

Twice a month. |
| 6. | dyan la
khránj | khun càaj khâafaj dyan la kîi
khránj

How many times a month
do you pay the light
bill? | dyan la khránj

Once a month. |

f) Transformation Drill (Change from affirmative to negative.)

- | | <u>Pattern 1</u>
(affirmative) | <u>Pattern 2</u>
(Negative) |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | bâannîi <u>mii</u> khrýanryan
<u>khróp</u> thúk jàan

This house has all
kinds of furniture. | bâannîi <u>mii</u> khrýanryan <u>mâj</u>
<u>khróp</u> (thúk jàan)

This house doesn't have
all kinds of furniture. |
| 2. | phôm <u>dâj</u> nánsýy <u>khróp</u>
thúk lêm lésu

I've got all the books
(in a series, etc.) | phôm <u>dâj</u> nánsýy <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u>
(thúk lêm)

I haven't got all the
books yet. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>3. phǒm <u>tòop</u> khamthǎam <u>khróp</u>
thúk khôo
I answered every single
question.</p> | <p>phǒm <u>tòop</u> khamthǎam <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u>
thúk khôo
I didn't answer all the
questions.</p> |
| <p>4. phǒm <u>dâj</u> nən <u>khróp</u> léew
I've already got all
the money.</p> | <p>phǒm <u>dâj</u> nən <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u>
I haven't got all the
money yet.</p> |
| <p>5. phǒm <u>thamnaan</u> (dâj) <u>khróp</u>
nỳn pii léew
I've already worked
for one year.</p> | <p>phǒm <u>thamnaan</u> <u>jan</u> <u>mâj</u> <u>khróp</u>
(nỳn) pii
I haven't been working
quite a year yet.</p> |

g) Sentence Expansion Drill

Pattern 1

1. kháw tittân khrýanpràpaakaat
hâj frii

They installed the air
conditioner free.

2. kháw hâj raw thaan frii

They let us eat free.

Pattern 2

- kháw tittân khrýanpràpaakaat
hâj frii. kháw mâj khít
khâatittân

They installed the air
conditioner free. They
didn't charge for installa-
tion.

- kháw hâj raw thaan frii
kháw mâj khít { khâa aahǎan
 { thaan

They let us eat free.
They didn't charge for
the food.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>3. kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">They let me stay free.</p> | <p>kháw hâj phǒm jùu frii</p> <p>kháw mâj khít khâa { châw
 } jùu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">They let me stay free.
They didn't charge me
for rent (or lodging).</p> |
| <p>4. kháw thamṇaan hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked for me free.</p> | <p>kháw thamṇaan hâj phǒm frii</p> <p>kháw mâj khít khâacâaṇ</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He worked, for me free.
He didn't charge for labor.</p> |
| <p>5. kháw sǒn náṅsǎy hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He taught me free.</p> | <p>kháw sǒn náṅsǎy hâj phǒm frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">He taught me free. He didn't
charge any tuition fee.</p> |
| <p>6. thaṅrooṇrian hâj lûuk khǒṇ</p> <p>kháw rian frii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school let his child
study there free.</p> | <p>thaṅrooṇrian hâj lûuk khǒṇ</p> <p>kháw rian frii. kháw mâj
khít khâa lâwrian</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">The school let his child
study free. They didn't
charge him any tuition fee.</p> |

n) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. dyan nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	dyan nâa Next month.
2. dyan mókharaa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	dyan mokharaa In January.
3. aathít nâa	kháw ca jáaj maa jùu mýaraj When will he move in?	aathít nâa Next week.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. wancan thîi
ca thÿn níi | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu
mÿaraj
When will be move in? | wancan thîi ca
thÿnníi
Monday of next
week. |
| 5. ìik 4 wan | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu
mÿaraj
When will he move in? | ìik 4 wan khráp
In 4 days. |
| 6. wansùk nâa | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu
mÿaraj
When will he move in? | wansùk nâa
Next Friday. |
| 7. pii nâa | kháw ca jáaj maa jùu
mÿaraj
When will be move in? | pii nâa
Next year. |

1) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | | |
|-------------|--|--|
| | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>phanrajaa</u> phǎm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my wife first. | |
| 1. naaj | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>naaj</u> phǎm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my boss first. | |
| 2. khruu | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>khruu</u> phǎm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my teacher first. | |
| 3. phÿan | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>phÿan</u> phǎm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my friend first. | |
| 4. lûuksǎaw | khǎo prÿksǎa <u>lûuksǎaw</u> phǎm kòon
I'd like to talk it over with my daughter first. | |

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. nóonchaaj khǎo prýksǎa nóonchaaj phǒm kòon

I'd like to talk it over with my younger brother first.

j) Response Drill (Listen to the description of the situation and answer the questions.)

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun cǎon kàp khun cim chǎw bǎan jùu dūajkan. khǎw sǎa khǎachǎw dyan la 4000 bàat. khun cǎon òok 2000 bàat. khun cim òok kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎon phan bàat</p>
<p>2. phýan 2 khon khǎwhún¹ kan sýy rǒtjon rakhaa 80,000 bàat. khon nyn òok 10,000 bàat. ìik khon nyn ca òok kǎi bàat</p>	<p>cèt mýyn bàat</p>
<p>3. khun A kàp khun B paj kin aahǎan klaanwan dūajkan. thǎn 2 khon kin aahǎan 50 bàat. khun B mi nǎn hǎj khun A 20 bàat thǎwnán khun A ca tǎn òok ìik kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎamsíp bàat</p>
<p>4. phanrajaa chuan sǎami paj sýy sýa hǎj lúuk. raakhaa tua la sǎam síp bàat tǎe phanrajaa mi nǎn hǎa bàat thǎwnán phanrajaa ca hǎj sǎami òok thǎwraj</p>	<p>jǎisíp hǎa bàat</p>
<p>5. khun prasít kàp khun prasàat paj lǎn boolǎn, keem la síp bàat, 6 keem thǎnmòt 60 bàat. thǎn sǎon khon ca òok nǎn khon la kǎi bàat</p>	<p>sǎamsíp bàat</p>

1. khǎw hún means 'to team up' or 'to go into partnership'

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. phŷan sŷi khon nŷn rŷt paj thŷaw tŷanŷanwŷt
sŷa khŷa nŷmman rŷt 76 bŷat
thŷn sŷi khon tŷn òk nŷn khon la kŷi bŷat . sŷpkŷaw bŷat

34.4 EXERCISES

- a) One student asks another what he pays in rent. When the second responds, he asks him what is included in the price. If some things are not included, he is asked how much they cost. If someone is sharing an apartment or house with another, he is asked how much each pays.
- b) One student asks another if he is renting a furnished house or apartment. If he is, the first asks him what is furnished. The second gives him a list.
- c) One student asks another (1) how many times a month and (2) on what day he must pay the bill for gas, electricity, water, rent, and gas.
- d) One student asks another when he moved into his present apartment or house and when he will move out.

34.5 VOCABULARY

òk (nŷn)	to put up the money for, to pay for, to stand good for
boolŷn	bowling
bŷriween	compound, area, grounds (around a building), vicinity
cŷaj (nŷn)	pay (refers to the actual expenditure of funds on a specific occasion)
chút rŷpkhŷsk (chút)	living room furniture
chút thaankhŷaw (chút)	a dining set

THAI BASIC COURSE

chiaw	really, very, indeed (When it occurs after a quantitative expression, it indicates that the speaker thinks the quantity referred to is larger than he expected.)
dænthaaŋ	to travel
frii	to be free (no cost)
jáaj { maa paj	(+ jùu) to move (in)
kwâaŋ	to be broad, wide
kwâaŋ khwǎaŋ	to be wide, to be large, to be roomy
keem (keem)	game (sports)
khâajùu	lodging
khâakéss	gas bill
khâalâwrian	tuition
khâarót	carfare
khâatittân	installation fee
khàat (tèè)	to be lacking, missing
khâw hûn	to team up, to go into partnership
khróp	to be complete (in quantity) to include all the members of a limited set of items
khryaŋ pràpaakàat (khryaŋ)	air conditioning
khryaŋryan (chút)	furniture
lót	to reduce (the price), to lower, discount
lûaŋnâa	in advance
phátlom	electric fan
phróom	to be ready, set, completed
phûuchâw (khon)	tenant
prasàat	Prasat, male first name

THAI BASIC COURSE

pr̀yksǎa	to talk it over, consult
ruam	include, to combine, add, add up, sum up
sǎnjaachâw (baj)	a lease
sùtháaj	last, final
sǎa (khâa)	to pay for something (a bill, etc.)
tawkéss	a gas stove
tittân	to install
tòkloŋ	to agree (to something)
tûu	chests of drawers, cabinets, (book) cases, wardrobe
tûujen (tûu)	a refrigerator

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

35.0 REVIEW DIALOG:

- A: khun dâj bâanchâw rýjan khráp Have you found a house to rent yet?
- B: kamlan hăa jùu khráp I'm still looking.
khun rúucàk khraj thîi mi Do you know anyone who
bâan hâj châw bâan máj khráp has a house to rent?
- A: phôm mi jâat khon nyn I have a relative.
khâw bòok phôm wâa khâw mi He told me he had a house
bâan hâj châw house to rent.
- B: jùu thîinăj khráp Where?
- A: jùu thîi thanôn phahônjoothin On Phaholyothin Lane 12.
sooj thîi 12
pen bâan klaanjàw klaanmàj. It's not old but it's
mi khrua bèep samăj màj, not new.
roonrót léswkô ryan khoncháj With a modern kitchen,
a carport, and servants' quarters.
- B: mi kîi hônnoon khráp How many bedrooms are there?
- A: săam hônnoon, mi hônnám Three (and) there are
2 hôn 2 bathrooms.
- B: soojnán thanôn pen janñaj What's the road like
bâan khráp in that 'soi'?
- A: dii khráp.nám, faj kô Good. The water and
saduak, thoorasàp kô mi electricity are good.
There are also telephones
(in that area).

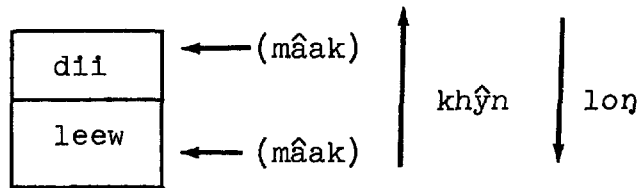
THAI BASIC COURSE

- B: kháw khít khâachâw janŋaj
khráp
What does he charge
for rent?
- A: dyan la sîi phan hâa, mâj
ruam khâa náam, khâa faj,
khâa thoorasàp lé khâa kéēs
phûu châw tōŋ sîa eej
4,500 per month not
including water,
electricity, telephone,
and gas.
The tenant has to pay
those himself.
- B: sîi phan hâa, mâj lôt læj
rǎkhráp
4500! Any discount at
all?
- A: kháw bōok phǒm wâa lôt dâj
bâan nítnōj
thâa khun sǒncaj, phǒm ca
thǎam hâj
He told me he could
come down a little.
If you're interested,
I'll ask him for you.
- B: khòopkhun mâak khráp
khun chûaj tittōo hâj
dûaj nakhráp
Thank you very much.
Please inquire about
it for me.
dǎawníi bâan dii dii hǎa
jàak lýakæen
Nowadays it's extremely
difficult to find good
houses.
- A: khráp, phró bâan mií nōj
lé mií khon tōŋkaan châw
mâak khÿn
khâachâw læj phæŋ khÿn
thúk wan
Yes, there are few houses
and more and more people
needing them.
As a result, rents are
getting higher everyday.

THAI BASIC COURSE

35.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

- a) A large number of stative verbs may be grouped together as binary sets with opposite meanings, such as dii: leew 'good:bad', etc. If a model like the following is drawn with ascending and descending degrees of 'goodness' and 'badness', it will be observed that the change from one to the other is a gradual thing: (i.e. passing through an infinite number of gradations):



Going from leew towards dii would be going up (khÿn) and going the opposite direction would be going down (loŋ).

In this situation dii khÿn 'getting better' indicates that a change is taking place and the direction of the change is towards 'goodness' (upwards). It does not tell us what the situation was (how good or how bad) when the change began or how far it has progressed. A similar situation in reverse is pictured in leew loŋ 'getting worse'.

It would be incorrect to read some deep philosophic meaning into the fact that one stative verb occurs with khÿn and its opposite with loŋ. It is no more significant than the fact that some adjectives occur with 'more' and some with '-er' in the comparative in English. In the following list of binary sets the first member occurs with khÿn; the second with loŋ:

kèn: jêε 'competent: very bad', rew: cháa 'fast: slow', phsɛŋ: thùuk 'expensive: cheap', sa-àat: sòkkapròk 'clean: dirty', rón: nǎaw 'hot: cold', mâak: nóoj 'much, many: little, few', sabaaj: lambàak 'having an easy time: having a hard time', ruaj: con 'rich: poor', nàk: baw 'heavy: light', too, jàj: lék

THAI BASIC COURSE

'tall, big: small', jaaw: sân 'long: short', ũan:
 phǒm 'fat: thin', jâak: nâaj 'hard: easy', sŭn:
 tîa 'tall: short (of persons)' khǎeŋ: òn 'hard: soft'.

- b) Stative verbs like thùuk, con, etc. that usually occur with lon may occur with khÿn to indicate an intensification of a situation already in existence. Observe the difference in meaning between con lon and con khÿn in the following examples:

<u>Situation</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw khøej ruaj dǎawníi kháw mii nǎen nǒoj lon He used to be rich. Now he has less money.	kháw con lon He's getting poorer.
2. kháw con jùu léew dǎawníi kháw con mâak kwàa tèe kòon He was poor already. Now he's poorer than before.	kháw con khÿn He's getting even poorer.

35.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>khâachâwbâan</u> phseŋ khÿn	Rents are going up.
1. aahǎan	<u>aahǎan</u> phseŋ khÿn	Food is getting more expensive.
2. dii	aahǎan <u>dii</u> khÿn	The food is getting better.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3.	aakàat	<u>aakàat</u> dii khÿn	The weather is getting better.
4.	róon	aakàat <u>róon</u> khÿn	The weather is getting hotter.
5.	sabaaaj	aakàat <u>sabaaaj</u> khÿn	The weather is getting more comfortable.
6.	phǒm	<u>phǒm</u> sabaaaj khÿn	I feel better.
7.	kháw	<u>kháw</u> sabaaaj khÿn	He feels better.
8.	kèn	kháw <u>kèn</u> khÿn	He is getting more skillful.
9.	dii	kháw <u>dii</u> khÿn	He is improving.
10.	phaasǎa thaj phǒm	<u>phaasǎa thaj</u> <u>phǒm</u> dii khÿn	My Thai is improving.
11.	roonrian khǒon raw	<u>roonrian</u> <u>khǒon</u> <u>raw</u> dii khÿn	Our school is improving.
12.	jàj	roonrian khǒon raw <u>jàj</u> khÿn	Our school is getting bigger.
13.	suǎj	roonrian khǒon raw <u>suǎj</u> khÿn	Our school is getting more beautiful.
14.	phûujǐn khonnán	<u>phûujǐn</u> <u>khonnán</u> suǎj khÿn	That lady is getting more beautiful.
15.	dii	phûujǐn khonnán <u>dii</u> khÿn	That lady is getting better.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| 16. | phǒm rúucàk
kháw | <u>phǒm rúucàk</u> <u>kháw</u>
dii khÿn | I'm getting to know
him better and better. |
| 17. | phǒm phûut
phaasǎa thaj
dâj | <u>phǒm phûut</u>
<u>phaasǎathaj</u> <u>dâj</u>
dii khÿn | My ability to speak
Thai is improving. |
| 18. | rew | phǒm phûut
phaasǎathaj dâj
<u>rew</u> khÿn | The rate at which I
speak Thai is going
up. |
| 19. | phǒm khàp rôt | <u>phǒm khàp rôt</u> rew
khÿn | I drive faster (than
previously). |
| 20. | phǒm
thamnaan | <u>phǒm thamnaan</u> rew
khÿn | I work faster (than
previously). |

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>khâachâwbân</u> thùuk loŋ	The rent is going down.
1. khǒŋ	<u>khǒŋ</u> thùuk loŋ	Things are getting cheaper.
2. rôt	<u>rôt</u> thùuk loŋ	Cars are getting cheaper.
3. cháa	rôt <u>cháa</u> loŋ	The car is slowing down.
4. kháw khàp rôt	<u>kháw khàp rôt</u> cháa loŋ	He reduced the car's speed.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | | |
|----|--------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5. | jêε | kháw khàp rôt <u>jêε</u> loŋ. | His driving is getting worse. |
| 6. | rooŋrian nán | <u>rooŋrian</u> <u>nán</u> jêε loŋ | That school is getting worse. |
| 7. | lék | rooŋrian nán <u>lék</u> loŋ | That school is getting smaller. |

c) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

dǎawníi, mii khon tōŋkaan châw bâan mâak khÿn

At present, there is an increasing demand for houses.

1. raw mii khruu

dǎawníi, raw mii khruu mâak khÿn

At present, we have more and more teachers.

2. phǒm cháj ñen

dǎawníi, phǒm cháj ñen mâak khÿn

At present, I spend more and more money.

3. phǒm mii ñen

dǎawníi phǒm mii ñen mâak khÿn

At present I have more and more money.

4. phǒm phûut
phaasǎa thaj dâj

dǎawníi, phǒm phûut phaasǎa thaj dâj mâak khÿn

At present I can speak more and more.

5. phǒm tōŋ sýy
aahǎan

dǎawníi, phǒm tōŋ sýy aahǎan mâak khÿn

At present I have to buy more and more food.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. phǒm thamṇaan dǎawníi, phǒm thamṇaan mâak khÿn
At present I work more and more.

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- dǎawníi, raw mii nákrian nóoj loṅ
At present we have fewer students.
1. khruu dǎawníi raw mii khruu nóoj loṅ.
At present we have fewer teachers.
2. cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn dǎawníi, raw mii cǎwnâathîi kèn kèn nóoj loṅ
At present, we have a smaller number
of competent staff.
3. mǎo diidii dǎawníi, raw mii mǎo dii dii nóoj loṅ
At present we have a lower number
of good doctors.
4. ṇaan tham dǎawníi, raw mii ṇaan tham nóoj loṅ
At present we have less work to do.
5. ṇen dǎawníi, raw mii ṇen nóoj loṅ
At present we have less money.
6. dâj dǎawníi, raw dâj ṇen nóoj loṅ
At present we earn less money.
7. cháj dǎawníi, raw cháj ṇen nóoj loṅ
At present we spend less money.

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. dyanníi mýadyankòon khâafaj sǒon
rǒoj bàat
dyanníi khâa faj rǒoj
hâasìp bàat
Last month, the light bill
was two hundred baht.
This month, the light bill
was 150 baht.
dyanníi, khâafaj
thùuk loŋ
This month the light
bill has gone down.
5. dǎawníi mýakòonníi, krunthêep mii
khloon mâak
dǎawníi, krunthêep mii
khloon nǒoj
In the old days, there were
many canals in Bangkok.
Nowadays, there are few
canals in Bangkok.
dǎawníi, krunthêep mii
khloon nǒoj loŋ
Nowadays there are
fewer canals in Bangkok.
6. dǎawníi mýakòonníi mii khon paj
thíaw thínân mâak
dǎaw níi mii khon paj
thíaw thínân nǒoj
Formerly, there were many
people visiting that place.
Nowadays, there are few
people visiting that place.
dǎawníi, mii khon paj
thíaw thínân nǒoj loŋ
Nowadays there are
fewer people visit-
ing that place.
7. dǎawníi mýakòonníi, bâannán màj
dǎawníi bâan nán kàw
That house was new.
Now that house is old.
(dǎawníi) bâannán kàw
loŋ
That house has gotten
older.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. dǎawníi mǎyakòon níi, bāanchâw
 hǎa mâj jâak
 dǎawníi, bāanchâw hǎa
 jâak
 Formerly it was not
 difficult to find a
 house.
 At present it is
 difficult to find
 a house.
- dǎawníi, bāanchâw hǎa
 jâak khÿn
 At present it is in-
 creasingly difficult
 to find a house.
9. dǎaw mǎyakòon níi, thěwníi
 mâj sadùak
 dǎawníi, thěwníi sadùak
 Formerly this area wa
 was inconvenient.
 At present this area
 is convenient.
- dǎaw níi, thěwníi sadùak
 khÿn
 At present this area
 is more convenient.
10. dǎawníi mǎyakòon níi, khon thîi
 còp mahǎawítthajaalaj
 mii nóoj
 dǎawníi, khon thîi còp
 mahǎawítthajaalaj mii
 mâak
 Formerly there were
 few university
 graduates.
 At present there are
 a lot of university
 graduates.
- dǎawníi, khon thîi còp
 mahǎawítthajaalaj mii
 mâak khÿn
 At present the number
 of university graduates
 is increasing.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Transformation Drill (Form sentences with the cue words and khÿn or kwàa as indicated by the situation.)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. rón hot	1. mÿa waanní aakàat rón	wanní	wanní aakàat rón <u>khÿn</u> Today it's hotter.
	2. wanní aakàat rón mâak Yesterday, it was hot. Today, it is very hot.		
b. wanní mÿawaanní Today Yesterday		wanní	wanní aakàat rón <u>kwàa</u> mÿawaanní Today, the weather is hotter than yesterday.
2. a. phseŋ expensive	1. mÿakòonní khâachâw bân dyan la 2000 bàat	dÿawní	dÿawní khâachâwbân phseŋ <u>khÿn</u> Today the rent is more expensive.
	2. dÿawní khâachâwbân dyan la 4000 bàat Formerly, the rent was 2,000 baht a month. Today, the rent is 2,000 baht a month.		

THAI BASIC COURSE

<p>b. thùuk cheap</p>	<p>1. khâachâwbâan dĭawnĭi mĭya kòonnĭi</p> <p>2. khâachâwbâan dĭawnĭi</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent in those days</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">the rent today</p>	<p>dĭawnĭi khâachâwbâan phseŋ <u>kwàa</u> mĭyakòonnĭi</p> <p>Today the rent is cheaper than in those days.</p>
<p>3. a. nâajùu nice (to live)</p>	<p>1. mĭyakòonnĭi dĭawnĭi thěwnĭi mâj nâajùu</p> <p>2. dĭawnĭi, thěwnĭi nâajùu</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly, this area was not nice to live in.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Today, this area is nice to live in.</p>	<p>dĭawnĭi, thěwnĭi nâajùu <u>khÿn</u></p> <p>Today, this area is nicer to live in.</p>
<p>b. mĭyakòonnĭi dĭawnĭi formerly today</p>	<p style="padding-left: 40px;">dĭawnĭi</p>	<p>dĭawnĭi, thěwnĭi nâajùu (khÿn) <u>kwàa</u> mĭyakòon</p> <p>Today, this area is nicer than in those days.</p>
<p>4. a. dii good</p>	<p>1. mĭyakòonnĭi, dĭawnĭi thanõn mâj dii</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Formerly the road was bad.</p>	<p>dĭawnĭi, thanõn dii <u>khÿn</u></p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. dǎawnǐi, thanǎn
dii

At present the
road is good.

b. mǎyakǎǎnnǐi
dǎawnǐi
formerly,
now

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thanǎn
dii (khǎn) kwàa
mǎyakǎǎnnǐi

Now the road is
better than
formerly

5. a. mií mǎak
there are
a lot

1. mǎyakǎǎnnǐi, dǎawnǐi
thǎinǐi mií faràṅ nǎǎj

2. dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi
mií faràṅ mǎak

Formerly there
were few
Westerners here.

Now there are a
lot of Westerners
here.

dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi
mií faràṅ mǎak
khǎn

Now, there are
more Westerners
here.

b. mǎyakǎǎnnǐi,
dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi

dǎawnǐi, thǎinǐi
mií faràṅ mǎak
(khǎn) kwàa
mǎyakǎǎnnǐi

There are more
Westerners now
than those days.

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Sentence Formation Drill

Using the information given in the cue sentences form sentences with loŋ or khÿn so as to illustrate the type of change underway.

Cue sentences

Pattern

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. a. kháw khæj ruaj
dĭawníi kháw mi
nən nój loŋ
He used to be rich.
Now he has less money. | kháw con loŋ

He's getting poorer. |
| b. kháw con jùu léew
dĭawníi kháw con mâak kwàa
tèe kòon
He was poor.
Now he is poorer than
he was before. | kháw con khÿn

He's getting even poorer. |
| 2. a. khǒŋ khæj phæŋ
dĭawníi khǒŋ mi
raakhaa nój loŋ
Things used to be
expensive.
Now the price of things
is going down. | khǒŋ thùuk loŋ

Things are getting
cheaper. |
| b. khǒŋ thùuk jùu léew
dĭawníi thùuk kwàa
tèe kòon
Things were already
cheap.
Now things are cheaper
than before. | khǒŋ thùuk khÿn

Things are getting
even cheaper. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. a. kháw khəej pen khon dii kháw leew lon
dǎawníi kháw mâj dii
He used to be a good person.
Now he isn't good. He's turning bad.
- b. kháw pen khon mâj dii kháw leew khÿn
dǎawníi kháw mâj dii mâak
kwàa kàw
He wasn't a good person. He's getting even worse.
Now he's worse than formerly.
4. a. aakàat khəej rón aakàat nǎaw lon
dǎawníi aakàat plian pen nǎaw
The weather was hot. It's getting colder.
Now it has turned cold.
- b. mÿawaanníi aakàat nǎaw
wanníi aakàat nǎaw kwàa aakàat nǎaw khÿn
mÿawaanníi
Yesterday it was cold.
Today it's colder than it was yesterday. The weather's becoming even colder.
5. a. phûujǐn khonnán khəej kháw phǒm lon
uân mâak
dǎawníi kháw lót námnaek
dâj mâak
That woman used to be fat.
Now she has lost a lot of weight. She's getting thinner.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- b. kháw pen khon phǒm kháw phǒm khÿn
mÿawaanníi phǒm phóp kháw
kháw phǒm mâak kwàa dæm
She was a thin person.
Yesterday I met her.
She was much thinner than
before. She's getting even thinner.
6. a. khun sǒmsàk khøej sabaaj kháw lambàak lon
dÿawníi kháw tǒn tham
naan mâak
Somsak used to have it
easy.
Now he has a lot of
work to do. It's getting harder
for him.
- b. khun sǒmsàk lambàak jùu léew kháw lambàak khÿn
dÿawníi kháw tǒn tham naan
nák mâak kwàa kǒn
Somsak was already having
a hard time.
Now he has to work harder
than before. It's getting even harder
for him.

35.3 BASIC EPISODE

khun coon wájt pen khâarâatchakaan krasuan tãanprathêet
thîi sathãanthûut ameerikan. weelaanîi kháw pháak jùu thîi
roonrëem raamâa. kháw hãa bãanchãw maa lãaj wan léew.

kháw mâj jàak jùu aphaatmênt phró kháw chõop jùu bãan mâak
kwãa. kháw jàak dâj bãan jàjjàj phró khrõopkhrua khõonkháw
mii dûajkan hãa khon, khyy khun coon, phanrajae lé lûuk 3
khon.

bãan diidii naj krunthêep hãa jãak lé khãachãw kô phëe
lýakëen. khun coon dâj khãachãwbãan dyan la 5000 bàat, tèe
bãan thîi kháw paj duu wáj khãachãw jãan tãm dyan la hãa
phan hãa. dïawnîi , krunthêep khãachãwbãan phëe mâak phró
mii khon tõnkaan chãw mâak khÿn.

wannîi pen wansãw, khun coon paj hãa naajnãa. naajnãa phaa
kháw paj duu bãan lãnnÿn thîi thanõn sùkhũmwít sooj thîi jîi
sip cèt. bãannîi pen bãan klaanjàw klaanmàj. pen tÿk sõon chán.
mii hõn sãam hõn, hõnnám 2 hõn. mii hõn rápkhèek jàj,
hõnaahãan lé hõnkhrua bèep than samãj. mii roonrót jùu tít
kàp bãan. lãn bãan mii hõn kèp khõon lé ryan khoncháj.
nãabãan mii sanãam kwãan.

cãwkhõonbãan khít khãachãw dyan la hãa phan hãa rój bàat
tè kháw lót hãj khun coon hãarój bàat. pen hãaphan bàat
thũan. kháw hãj khun coon tham sãnjaachãw nÿn pii kàp càaj
nëen lûaannãa hãj kháw sãam dyan. khãachãw hãaphan bàat níi
ruam thãn khrÿanryan. kháw mii khrÿanryan phróm thúkjàan
khãat tè khrÿanpràpaakaat. sũan khãanám, khãafaj, khãathoorasàp,
lé khãakéss khun coon tõon sía eon. khun coon bòok cãwkhõonbãan
wãa kháw ca jáaj paj jùu bãan màj wanthîi nÿn dyan thanwaakhom.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Translation of the Episode.

Mr. John White is a State Department official. He has just arrived in Thailand. He came to work at the American Embassy. At present, he is staying at the Rama Hotel. He has been looking for a house for many days. He doesn't want to live in an apartment because he prefers a house. He wants a big house because there are five persons in his family: John, his wife and three children.

Good houses are hard to find and the rent is too expensive. John gets 5000 Baht a month for his housing allowance, but the houses he has looked at are at least 5,500 Baht a month. Today rent in Bangkok is very high because there are more demands.

Today is Saturday. John goes to see a house agent. The house agent takes him to look at a house on Sukumvit Lane 27. This house is not too old, nor brand new. It is a two-story brick house with three bedrooms, and two bathrooms. There is a big living room, dining room and a modern kitchen. There is a carport adjoining the house. At the back of the house, there is a storage room and servants' quarter. There is a big lawn in front of the house.

The landlord charged 5,500 Baht a month for the rent but for John he came down to 5,000 Baht, which is 500 Baht exactly. He had John sign a lease for one year and pay him three months rent in advance. This 5000 Baht includes furniture. The house is completely furnished except for air conditioners. As for water, electricity, telephone and gas, John has to pay them himself. John told the landlord that he was going to move into the new house on December 1.

THAI BASIC COURSE

35.4 QUESTIONS ON THE EPISODE

Answer the following questions according to the story given:

1. khun coon thamnaan araj
What does John do (for a living)?
2. khaw maa juu myanthaj daj naan rýjan
Has he been in Thailand long?
3. weelaani khaw phak juu thfinaj
Where is he staying now?
4. thammaj khun coon ton haa banchaw
Why does he have to look for a house?
5. thammaj khun coon thyn maj jaak juu aphatmet
Why doesn't he want to live in an apartment?
6. thammaj khun coon thyn tonkaan ban jajaj
Why does John need a rather large house?
7. thammaj khun coon thyn ton haa banchaw juu laaj wan.
Why did he have to spend many days looking for a home?
8. khun coon daj khachawban maak phoo thi ca chaw ban
dyan la haa phan haa rooj bat maj
Does he get enough housing allowance to pay for
the rent at 5,500 per month?
9. ban thi khun coon toklon chaw juu thfinaj
Where is the house John agrees to rent?
10. bannan pen ban besnáj
What kind of house is it?

(a) sdonchan rý chandaw	Two or one-story?
(b) tik rý maj	Masonry or wooden?

THAI BASIC COURSE

- (c) mi hōŋ araj bāaŋ What rooms are there?
d (d) mi kīi hōŋnōon How many bedrooms?
(e) pen bāanlék rý bāanjàj A small or big house?
(f) mi roonrót máj.jùu thīinǎj Any carport? Where?
11. cāwkhōŋbāan khít khâachâw dyan la thâwràj
How much does the landlord charge for the rent?
12. bāannán mi khrýaŋryan máj . mi araj bāaŋ.
Is it furnished? What do they have for furniture?
- 13.. khâachâw hâaphán bàat níi ruam thán khâanám khâafaj
dûaj rýplàaw
Does this 5,000 Baht rent include water and
electricity?
14. khun cōon tham sǎnjaa châw kīi pii
How long a lease did John sign?
15. kháw tōŋ hâj ñen lûaŋnâa kīi dyan.
How much deposit does he have to pay?
16. kháw ca jàaj paj jùu bāanmàj mýaraj
When is the going to move into the new house?

35.5 EXERCISES

- a) Suppose one student is Mr. John White, another a house agent. Have the two students carry on a conversation based on the story given.
- b) Suppose one student is Mr. Smith, a bachelor, looking for a one bedroom apartment, another student is a landlord. Have them carry on a conversation using the sentences they have learned.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- c) Discuss situations that are in a state of flux whether getting better, worse, harder, etc. For example:
1. Someone is richer or poorer than he used to be.
 2. Some things are cheaper or more expensive than formerly.
 3. The weather is colder or hotter than it was 2 months ago or will be 3 months hence.
 4. Someone's relatives are much fatter or thinner than they were at some time in the past or will be at some time in the future.
- d) Compare various people or things in terms of physical size. For example:

phôo phôm sũun kwàa mêe l fút 'My father's a foot
taller than my mother.'

35.6 VOCABULARY

òon	to be soft, tender
ûan	to be fat, stout
baw	to be light (in weight)
jàj	to be large, big, major, main
khěŋ	to be hard, firm, strong, stiff
klaaŋkàw klaaŋmàj	not old but not new
lambàak	to be hard, difficult, troublesome
leew	to be bad, poor (in quality); low (in character)
lǎakəən	too..., so...
mâak	to be much, many; a lot; very
năaw	to be colder (weather, person)
nàk	to be heavy; hard (of work); severely, very

THAI BASIC COURSE

ηâaj	to be simple, easy
phǎom	to be thin (not fat)
sa-àat	to be clean
sân	to be short (in length)
sòkkapròk	to be dirty
sǔun	to be high, tall
tîa	to be short, low (in height)
wájt	White (English name)

THAI BASIC COURSE

	nýanǎa, thon mâak, lé mâj khôoj jáp	It's heavy, very durable, and is wrinkle-resistant
khonsýykhǝŋ:	sák nám dâj máj khráp	Is it washable?
khonkhǎaj:	dâj khà tè sák hêeŋ dii kwàa	Yes, but it's better to have it dry cleaned.
khonsýykhǝŋ:	sák léew, hòt máj khráp	Once it's washed, does it shrink?
khonkhǎaj:	nít nòoj khà	A little.

36.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) jàaŋ means 'kind, type (with emphasis on quality)'.

Observe the following example:

phâamǎj mii lǎaj jàaŋ. mii jàaŋ dii, jàaŋ mâj dii
 jàaŋ thùuk , jàaŋ phêeŋ , jàaŋ nâakwâaŋ jàaŋ nâakhêep

There are many kinds of Thai silk. There is
 the good kind and the bad kind, the cheap kind
 and the expensive kind, the wide kind, the
 narrow kind.

- b) chanít means 'kind' or 'type' with emphasis on special
 characteristics, such as 'being colorfast' (chanít
 sǐi mâj tòk), or 'being made of wood' (chanít tham
 dūaj mǎaj), or 'having long grains (as of rice)
 (chanít met jaaw), etc.

phâa mii lǎaj chanít: mii phâamǎj, phâafâaj, phâanajlôn
 lé ýynýyn

There are many kinds of cloth: silk, cotton,
 nylon, etc.

THAI BASIC COURSE

36.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Types of Comparison

1. Equality.

thâw + kàp / kan 'equal, same in size or quantity'
may occur (1) in construction with stative verbs,
or (2) independently.

a) khǒn sǒn jàanníi phɛɛn thâwkan

These two things are equally expensive.
(with stative verb phɛɛn)

khâw phûut phaasǎathaj dâj dii thâw kàp khun

He speaks Thai as well as you do.
(with stative verb dii)

b) Independently (as main verb in the sentence)

phâa sǒn jàanníi raakhaa thâw kan

These two fabrics are of the same price.

bâan lǎnnán khâachâw thâw kàp bâan lǎnníi

The rent for that house is the same as for
this one.

2. Inequality.

kwàa 'more (than), to a greater extent' occurs in
construction with stative Verbs.

khâw khàp rôt rew kwàa phǒm.

He drives faster
than I do.

ràanníi dii kwàa ráannóon

This shop is better
than that one.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. Equality and Inequality compared

a) phǒm chǒp khun thâw (thâw) kàp kháw
I like you as much as (I like) him.

phǒm chǒp khun thâw (thâw) kàp (thîi) kháw
chǒp (khun)

I like you as much as he (likes you).

b) phǒm chǒp khun mâak kwàa kháw
I like you more than (I like) him.

phǒm chǒp khun mâak kwàa thîi kháw chǒp khun
I like you more than he (likes you).

4. Superlative.

thîisùt 'most, -est' occurs in construction with
stative verbs.

nán̄sǔy lêm̄nîi dii thîisùt This book is the best.

kháw pen nákriian thîi kèn̄ He is the best student
thîisùt náj chán̄ in the class.

b) Equational sentences.

phâa (jàan̄ pèetsìp bàat) nâakwâan̄
Cloth (of the 80 baht kind.) (is) wide.

This type of sentence is called an equational sentence.
It is very common in Thai. Other examples are:

phâanîi nâakhêsp This cloth is narrow.

bâan lănnán̄ khâachâw phsən̄ The rent for that house
is high.

THAI BASIC COURSE

Formation of Noun Phrases derived from this type of sentence is also common.

<u>phâa nâakwâaŋ</u>	The wide material.
<u>rót raakhaa phœŋ</u>	Expensive cars.

c) NOUN PHRASE }
 VERB PHRASE } + dii kwàa 'It's better to...!'

dii kwàa may have either Noun Phrase or Verb Phrase as subject. Below are some examples with Verb Phrase as subject:

<u>sákhêŋ dii kwàa</u>	It's better to dry clean (it).
(<u>phǒm wâa, khun</u>) <u>jùu bân dii kwàa</u>	(I think) it's better for (you) to stay home.

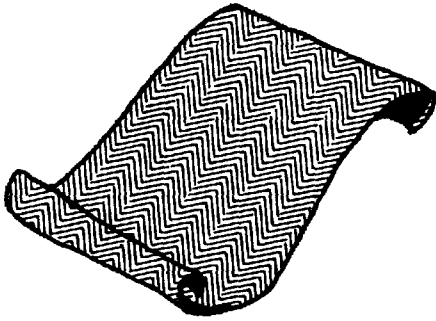
36.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Transformation Drill (Use jàaŋ with the stative verb and the noun to form a Noun Phrase.)

Cues

Noun Phrase

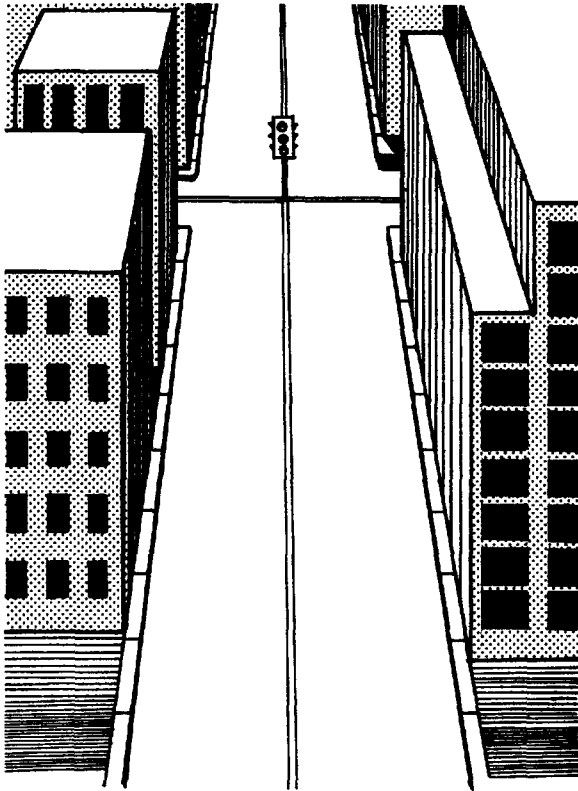
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. dii, phâamǎj
good, silk cloth | phâamǎj jàaŋ dii
good quality silk cloth |
| 2. phœŋ, phátlom
expensive, fan | phátlom jàaŋ phœŋ
Expensive fans. |
| 3. dii, tûujen
good, refrigerator | tûujen jàaŋ dii
Good refrigerators. |
| 4. thùuk, fœnitêe
cheap, furniture | fœnitêe jàaŋ thùuk
Cheap furniture. |



phâa ní nâakwâaŋ



phâa ní nâakhêp



thanŏn sǎaj ní kwâaŋ



thanŏn sǎaj ní khêp

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 5. phɛɛŋ, tó
expensive, table | tó jàaŋ phɛɛŋ
Expensive tables. |
| 6. dii, kâwîi
good, chair | kâwîi jàaŋ dii
Good quality chairs. |

b) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| | <u>phâamǎj</u> jàaŋnîi pen <u>phâamǎj</u> jàaŋ dii thîisùt
This kind of silk is the best kind
(of silk). |
| 1. phátlom | <u>phátlom</u> jàaŋnîi pen <u>phátlom</u> jàaŋ dii thîisùt
This kind of fan is the best kind
of fan. |
| 2. khrÿaŋ pràpaakàat | khrÿaŋ pràpaakàat jàaŋnîi pen khrÿaŋ
pràpaakàat jàaŋ dii thîisùt
This kind of air conditioner is the
best kind. |
| 3. tûujen | <u>tûujen</u> jàaŋnîi pen <u>tûujen</u> jàaŋ dii thîisùt
This kind of refrigerator is the best
kind. |
| 4. khrÿaŋ khrua | <u>khrÿaŋ khrua</u> jàaŋnîi pen <u>khrÿaŋ khrua</u>
jàaŋ dii thîisùt
This kind of kitchen utensil is the
best kind. |
| 5. fəənitêə | <u>fəənitêə</u> jàaŋnîi pen <u>fəənitêə</u> jàaŋ dii
thîisùt
This kind of furniture is the best kind. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Transformation Drill

Combine the sentences in patterns 1, 2, 3 with the cue to form the resultant pattern, then repeat the operation using a stative verb with opposite meaning (the second cue).

<u>Patterns 1, 2, 3</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Resultant Pattern</u>
1. a. phâamăj jàanńíi māj dii b. phâamăj jàanńán dii c. phâamăj jàanńóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	phâamăj jàanńóon dii thĭisùt
	<u>leew</u>	phâamăj jàanńíi leew thĭisùt
This kind of silk is not good. That kind of silk is good. That other kind of silk is the best.		The other kind of silk is the best. This kind of silk is the worst in quality.
2. a. samùt jàanńíi māj dii b. samùt jàanńán dii c. samùt jàanńóon dii mâak	<u>dii</u>	samùt jàanńóon dii thĭisùt
	<u>leew</u>	samùt jàanńíi leew thĭisùt
This notebook is not good. That notebook is good. The notebook over there is very good.		The notebook over there is the best. This notebook is the worst.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. a. aahǎan thǎinǎi phsɛŋ
 b. aahǎan thǎinǎn phsɛŋ mâak
 c. aahǎa thǎinôn phsɛŋ lýa

phsɛŋ

aahǎan thǎinôn phsɛŋ
 thǎisùt

thùuk

aahǎan thǎinǎi thùuk
 thǎisùt

The food here is
 expensive.

The food there is more
 expensive.

The food over there is
 very, very expensive.

The food over there
 is the most expensive.

The food here is
 the cheapest.

4. a. tỳk lǎnǎi mâj jàj
 b. tỳk lǎnǎn jàj
 c. tỳk lǎnón jàj mâak

jàj

tỳk lǎnón jàj thǎisùt

lék

tỳk lǎnǎi lék thǎisùt

This building is not
 large.

That building is large.

The building over there
 is very large.

The building over
 there is the largest.

This building is
 the smallest.

5. a. nǎnsýyphim thaj mâj nǎa
 b. nǎnsýyphim wanaathít nǎa
 c. nǎnsýyphim niw jóok nǎa
 mâak

nǎa

nǎnsýyphim niwjóok
 nǎa thǎisùt

baan

nǎnsýyphim thaj baan
 thǎisùt

Thai newspapers are
 not thick.

The N.Y. paper is
 the thickest.

THAI BASIC COURSE

The Sunday paper is
thick.

The N.Y. paper is very
thick.

The Thai paper is
the thinnest.

6. a. thanǒn carəənkrun̄ māj kwān̄

b. thanǒn phétburii kwān̄

c. thanǒn mítraphâap kwān̄
mâak

kwān̄

thanǒn mítraphâap
kwān̄ thîisùt

khêep

thanǒn carəənkrun̄
khêep thîisùt

Charoen Krung is not
wide.

Phetburi Street is wide.

Friendship Highway is
very wide.

Friendship Highway
is the widest.

Charoenkrung Street
is the narrowest.

7. a. khun prasít rian māj kèn̄

b. khun prasàat rian kèn̄

c. khun prasǒŋ rian kèn̄ mâak

kèn̄

khun prasǒŋ rian kèn̄
thîisùt

jêe

khun prasít rian jêe
thîisùt

Prasít is not a good
student.

Prasat is a good student.

Prasong is a very good
student.

Prasong is the
best student.

Prasít is the worst
student.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. a. khâa rôttraaŋ mâj phœŋ

b. khâa rôtme phœŋ

c. khâa rôt thésksîi phœŋ
mâak

phœŋ

khâa rôt thésksîi
phœŋ thîisùt

thùuk

khâa rôttraaŋ thùuk
thîisùt

Street car fare is cheap.

Bus fare is expensive.

Taxi fare is very
expensive.

Taxi fare is the
most expensive.

Street car fare is
the cheapest.

9. a. sukhôothaj khœj pen
mÿaŋlŭaŋ mÿa pii phoo
sô 1800

b. ajuthajaa khœj pen
mÿaŋlŭaŋ mÿa pii
phoo sô 1893.

c. krunthêep pen mÿaŋlŭaŋ
mÿa pii phoo sô 2325

kàw

sukhôothaj pen mÿaŋlŭaŋ
kàw thîisùt

màj

krunthêep pen mÿaŋlŭaŋ
màj thîisùt

Sukhothaj was the capitol
up to B.E. 1800.

Ayuthaya was the capitol
in B.E. 1893.

Bangkok is the capitol
since B.E. 2325.

Suthoothai is the
oldest capitol.

Bangkok is the
newest capitol.

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Sentence Construction Drill

(Compose Questions using the cue words and thîisùt)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. mahăawítthajaalaj, kàw, naj prathêet thaj university, to be old, in Thailand	mahăawítthajaalaj araj pen mahăawítthajaalaj thîi kàw thîisùt naj prathêet thaj What university is the old- est in Thailand?
2. caṇwàt, mii khonjùu mâak naj prathêet thaj Province. To have many people living in (it), in Thailand.	caṇwàt araj pen caṇwàt thîi mii khonjùu mâak thîisùt What province has the larg- est population in Thailand?
3. caṇwàt, jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak Province. (Very) far from Bangkok	caṇwàt araj pen caṇwàt thîi jùu klaj càak krunthêep mâak thîisùt What province is the farth- est province from Bangkok?
4. nánsÿyphim, mii khon àan mâak, naj prathêet thaj Newspaper, to have many readers. In Thailand	nánsÿyphim araj pen nánsÿy phim thîi mii khon àan mâak thîisùt naj prathêet thaj What newspaper has the larg- est number of readers in Thailand?
5. krasuan, jàj, naj prathêet thaj Ministry. Big. In Thailand	krasuan araj pen krasuan thîi jàj thîisùt naj prathêet thaj What ministry is the big- gest ministry in Thailand?

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. prathêet, nâajùu
naj lôok

prathêet araj năj pen
prathêet thîi nâajùu
thîisùt naj lôok

Country. Nice to live
in. In the world

What country is the nicest
country to live in this
world?

e) Transformation Drill

(Change patterns 1 and 2
into a sentence of comparison
using the cue and thâw.)

<u>Pattern 1 and 2</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 3</u>
1. phâa jàanán thùuk jàanóon phseŋ	raakhaa Price	phâa sŋon jàan nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan
That kind of fabric is cheap. That kind of fabric over there is expensive.		The prices of those two fabrics are not equal.
2. bâan lănnán khâachâw phseŋ lănnóon thùuk	khâachâw	bâan sŋon lăŋ nán khâachâw mâj thâwkan
The rent for that house is high. The rent for that house (over there) is cheap.		The rents for those two houses are not equal.
3. pàakkaa dâamnán thùuk dâamnîi phseŋ	raakhaa	pàakkaa sŋon dâam nán raakhaa mâj thâwkan
That pen is cheap. This pen is expensive.		The prices of those two pens are not equal.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>4. phâa jàaṅnóon nâakwâaṅ
phâa jàaṅnán nâakhêep</p> <p>That kind of fabric
(over there) is wide.
That fabric is narrow.</p> | <p>nâakwâaṅ
Width (of
the fabric)</p> | <p>phâa sǒṅ jàaṅ nán
nâa kwâaṅ mâj
thâwkan.</p> <p>Those two fabrics
are not equal in
width.</p> |
| <p>5. khâw dâj khâachâw
bâan nóṅj
phǒm dâj khâa
châwbâan mâak</p> <p>He gets a small
housing allowance.
I get a big housing
allowance.</p> | <p>khâa
châwbâan</p> <p>Housing
allowance</p> | <p>raw dâj
khâachâwbâan
mâj thâwkan</p> <p>We get different sized
housing allowances.</p> |

f) Transformation Drill

- | <u>Pattern 1</u> | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern 1</u> |
|--|--|---|
| <p>1. náṅsýy sǒṅlêm níi
dii thâwkan</p> <p>These two books are
equally good.</p> | <p>náṅsýy lêmnan
náṅsýy lêmníi</p> | <p>náṅsýy lêmnan dii
thâwkâp náṅsýy
lêmníi</p> <p>That book is as good
as this one.</p> |
| <p>2. phâa sǒṅ jàaṅnán
raakhaa thâwkan</p> <p>Those two kinds of
fabrics are equal
in price.</p> | <p>phâa jàaṅnán
phâa jàaṅníi</p> | <p>phâa jàaṅnán
raakhaa thâw ka
jàaṅníi</p> <p>The price of that
fabric is the same
as equal to this one.</p> |
| <p>3. khǒṅ thîinân ka
thîinîi phseṅ thâwkan</p> <p>Things here and there
are equally expensive.</p> | <p>khǒṅ thîinân
khǒṅ thîinîi</p> | <p>khǒṅ thîinân phseṅ
thâw ka khǒṅ thîinîi</p> <p>Things there are as
expensive as things
here.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>4. phûujǐn sǒn khon nán
suǎj thâwkan</p> <p>Those two girls are
equally pretty.</p> | <p>phûujǐn khonníi phûujǐn khonníi
phûujǐn khonnán suǎj thâwkap
phûujǐn khonnán</p> <p>khun coon ka khun fréť
rian kèn thâwkan</p> <p>John and Fred are
equally good (students).</p> | <p>This girl is as
pretty as that one.</p> <p>khun coon rian kèn
thâw ka khun fréť</p> <p>John is as good as
Fred. (as a student)</p> |
| <p>6. bâan sǒn lǎn nán
jàj thâw kan</p> <p>Those two houses are
equally big.</p> | <p>bâan lǎnnán
bâan lǎnnóon</p> | <p>bâan lǎnnán jàj
thâw ka bâan lǎnnóon</p> <p>That house is as big
as the one over there.</p> |
| <p>7. kháw dâj nèn
dyan la 2,000 bàat
phanrajaa kháw dâj
nèn dyan la 2000 bàat</p> <p>He makes 2,000 Baht
a month. His wife makes
2,000 Baht a month.</p> | <p>phan ra jaa
kháw kháw</p> | <p>phan ra jaa kháw
dâj nèn dyan
thâw ka kháw</p> <p>His wife and he get
the same salary.</p> |

g) Sentence Construction and Response Drill

(Form a question with one set of cues and
answer it according to the second set.)

<u>CUE</u>	<u>QUESTION</u>	<u>CUE</u>	<u>RESPONSE</u>
Example			
rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk rian phaasǎa juan	rian phaasǎa thaj sanúk thâw ka rian phaasǎa juan máj khráp	No	máj thâw khráp No, it isn't.

THAI BASIC COURSE

<p>Studying Thai is Fun. Studying Vietnamese</p>	<p>Is studying Thai as fun as study- ing Vietnamese?</p>	<p>Yes</p>	<p>sanúk thâwkan khráp Yes, it is.</p>
<p>1. khǒŋthîi wǒochintân phɛɛŋ khǒŋ thîi njujǒok</p>	<p>khǒŋ thîi wǒochintân phɛɛŋ thâw ka khǒŋ thîi njujǒok máj khráp</p>	<p>No</p>	<p>máj thâw khráp No, they aren't.</p>
<p>Things in Washington Expensive Things in New York</p>	<p>Are things in Washington as expensive as in New York?</p>		
<p>2. roŋrian phaasǎa thîi montɛere jǎj éf és aj</p>	<p>roŋrian phaasǎa thîi montɛere thâw ka éf és aj máj khráp</p>	<p>Yes</p>	<p>thâwkan khráp</p>
<p>The language school in Monterey. Big FSI</p>	<p>Is the language school in Monterey as big as FSI?</p>		<p>Yes, it is.</p>
<p>3. nákrían khonnán kèn nákrían khonnóon</p>	<p>nákrían khonnán kèn thâw ka nákrían khonnóon máj khráp</p>	<p>Yes</p>	<p>thâw kan khráp</p>
<p>That student good That student (there)</p>	<p>Is that student as good as that student over there?</p>		<p>Yes, he is.</p>
<p>4. jùu ameerikaa sabaaj jùu taanprathêet</p>	<p>jùu ameerikaa sabaaj thâw ka jùu taanprathêet máj khráp</p>	<p>No</p>	<p>máj thâw khráp</p>
<p>Living in America Easy Living abroad</p>	<p>Is living in America as easy as living abroad?</p>		<p>No, it isn't.</p>

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|--|------------------|
| 5. aakàat thîi
wóochintân
róon
(aakàat) thîi
krunthêep | aakàat thîi
wóochintân róon
thâw kap thîi
krunthêep májkráp | No mâj thâw |
|--|--|------------------|

The weather in Washington Hot. The weather in Bangkok	Is Washington as hot as Bangkok?	No, it isn't.
--	-------------------------------------	---------------

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. thon máj
jáp máj
năa máj
mýan máj
tâan kan máj
hót máj | Is it durable?
Does it wrinkle?
Is it thick?
Is it the same?
Is it different?
Does it shrink? |
| 2. sáknám lâj máj
sákhêen dâj máj
sák dâj máj
rîit dâj máj | Is it washable (in water)?
Is it dry cleanable?
Is it washable?
Can you iron it? |

1) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Response</u> (negative) | |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| 1. thon máj
Is it durable? | mâj thon læej
mâj thon
mâj khôj thon
{ mâj (khôj) thon thâwràj
{ mâj (khôj) thon nák | Not at all.
No.
Not too durable.
Not very durable. |
| 2. năa máj
Is it thick? | mâj năa læej
mâj năa
mâj khôj năa
{ mâj (khôj) năa thâwràj
{ mâj năa nák | Not at all.
No.
Not too thick.
Not very thick. |
| 3. dii máj
Is it good? | mâj dii læej
mâj dii
mâj khôj dii | Not at all.
No.
Not too good. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 4. jáp máj
Does it wrinkle? | mâj jáp ləej
mâj jáp
mâj khôj jáp
mâj (khôj) jáp thâwràj
mâj jáp nák | Not at all.
No.
Hardly at all.
Not very much.
Not so much. |
| 5. mŷan máj
Is it the same? | mâj mŷan ləej
mâj mŷan
mâj khôj mŷan
{ mâj (khôj) mŷan thâwràj
{ mâj mŷan nák | Not at all.
No.
Not really.
Not very much. |

j) Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|--|---|
| | <u>phâa jâan níi kajàanán tàan kan</u>
jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between this
fabric and that one? |
| 1. kham wâa 'sŷa' ka
kham wâa 'òok' | <u>kham wâa sŷa ka kham wâa òok</u>
tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between
the word 'sŷa' and 'òok'? |
| 2. phaasăa isăan ka
phaasăa nŷa | <u>phaasăa isăan ka phaasăa nŷa</u>
tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between
Northeastern and Northern
dialects? |
| 3. khwaamhěn khǝŋkhăw
ka khǝŋ khun | <u>khwaamhěn khǝŋkháw ka khǝŋkhun</u>
tàan kan jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between
your opinion and his? |
| 4. nánŷŷy
sǝŋlêm níi | <u>nánŷŷy sǝŋ lêm níi</u> tàan kan
jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between
these two books? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋníi

khǒŋ sǒŋ jàaŋ níi tàaŋ kan
jaŋŋaj khráp
What's the difference between
these two things?

k) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

1. sýy pháamǎj
jàaŋníi

sák hēeŋ dii kwàa
It's better to dry clean

sýy pháamǎj jàaŋníi dii kwàa
It's better to buy this kind
of silk.

2. duu nǎŋ ryâŋ nán

duu nǎŋ ryâŋnán dii kwàa
It's better to go to see that
movie.

3. pháŋk thīnân

pháŋk thīnân dii kwàa
It's better to stay there.

4. tham râatchakaan dii kwàa

tham râatchakaan dii kwàa
It's better to work for the
government.

5. jùu thěwníi

jùu thěwníi dii kwàa
It's better to live around
here.

6. paj thaan aahǎan thaj

paj thaan aahǎan thaj dii kwàa
It's better to go and have a
Thai meal.

7. paj prajsaniklaaŋ

paj prajsaniklaaŋ dii kwàa
It's better to go to the central
post office.

THAI BASIC COURSE

1) Expansion Drill

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 1. | kwâaŋ
nâa kwâaŋ
phâa nâa kwâaŋ
phâa níi nâa kwâaŋ
phâa jàaŋ níi nâa kwâaŋ
phâa mǎj jàaŋ níi nâa
kwâaŋ | Wide
The fabric is wide.
The wide fabric.
This fabric is wide.
This kind of fabric is wide.
This kind of silk is wide. |
| 2. | kwâaŋ
kwâaŋ thâwràj
nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj

phâa nâa kwâaŋ thâwràj
phâa jàaŋnán nâa kwâaŋ
thâw ràj
phaamǎj jàaŋnán nâa
kwâaŋ thâwràj | Wide
How wide?
How wide is the straight grain
(of fabric).
How wide is the fabric?

How wide is that kind of fabric?

How wide is that kind of silk? |
| 3. | kwâaŋ
kwâaŋ sìisìp níw
nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp níw

phâa nâa kwâaŋ sìisìp
phâa mǎj jàaŋnán nâa
kwâaŋ sìisìp níw | Wide
Forty inches wide
The straight grain of fabric is
40" wide.
Forty inches wide fabric(s)

That kind of silk is forty
inches wide. |
| 4. | mâj kwâaŋ
nâa mâj kwâaŋ

phâa nâa nâj kwâaŋ
phâamǎj jàaŋnán nâa
mâj kwâaŋ | Not wide
The straight grain of fabric is
not wide.
The not very wide fabric(s)
That kind of silk is
not wide. |

36.4 EXERCISES

a) Find out from the tutor

1. what kinds of cloth you can buy in Thailand,

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. where you can buy them (names of shops and locations),
 3. where and how silk is 'grown' in Thailand¹,
 4. where and how it is woven and what kind of dye is used, and
 5. what the difference is between various kinds of fabrics sold in Thailand (in terms of whether they shrink, are washable, durable, etc.)
- b) Discuss the difference in quality and price between different objects.
- c) Discuss differences in climate in different countries.
- d) Find out from the tutor or another student what some of the "'superlatives'" in the world are; for example,
1. the most beautiful city,
 2. the hottest climate,
 3. the oldest city, etc.
- e) One student suggests various 'action options'. Other students disagree with his suggestions and suggest others that they consider better. Finally one student comes up with what he considers to be the best suggestion of all. Other students disagree or agree with the suggestion.

¹ nǎon 'worm'; thoo (phâa) 'weave cloth'; jóom (phâa)
'to dye cloth'

THAI BASIC COURSE

36.5 VOCABULARY

baaŋ	thin
chanít	kind, type (emphasis on type)
frét	Fred (name)
hòt	to shrink
jàaŋ	kind, type (with emphasis on quality)
jàaŋdii	good quality
jáp	to wrinkle
jóom (phâa)	to dye (cloth)
khêep	narrow
khwaamhěn	opinion
kwâaŋ	wide, to be broad
lăa	yard (36'')
mâjkhôj	scarcely, hardly, not quite, not very
mét	seed, grain, pill
mítrophâap	Friendship (name of a highway in Thailand)
nâa khêep	narrow
năa	heavy (of material), heavy texture
nôn (tua)	worm
nyáphâa	texture of cloth
phâa fâaj	cotton
phâa mǎj	silk
phâa najlôn	nylon
phátlom (khrýaŋ)	electric fan
rít	to iron (cloth)
sák hêeŋ	to dry clean

THAI BASIC COURSE

sák nám	washable
tàaŋ kàp	to differ, be different, distinct (i.e. from each other), to differ from
thâw kàp	equal, same in size or quantity
thon	to be durable, lasting, to last, to endure
thîisut	superlative most, -est (occurs in construction with stative verbs)
thoo (phâa)	to weave cloth
tûujen (tûu)	refrigerator

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

37.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Clothing and Jewelry

- khonsýy: phâa jàanńi tât sýanôok
ka kaankeen phûuchaaaj
cháj phâa kii lăa For this kind of
material how many
yards does it take
for a jacket and
pair of pants?
- khonkhăaj: raaw pèet lăa About 8 yards.
- khonsýy: khun mii sǐi araj
bâan khráp What colors do
you have?
- khonkhăaj: mii sǐi thaw, dam,
kromathâa léswkô
sǐi námtaan I have grey, black,
blue, and brown.
- khonsýy: sǐi tòk bâan máj Does the color
fade any?
- khon khăaj: mâj tòk læej Not at all.
ráprœœj dâj I can guarantee it.
- khonsýy: nán, phom aw sǐi
pèet lăa Then I'll take 8
yards of grey.
(khonkhăaj tât phâa,
aw phâa sâj thŭn, lé
sœœn hâj khonsýy.) (The saleslady cuts
the material, puts
it in a bag, and
hands it to the
buyer.)
- khonsýy: thánmôt thâwràj khráp How much is it
altogether?
- khonkhăaj: kâaw róœœj hòksíp bàat
thûan khâ 960 baht exactly.
khun mâj chom sǐnkhâa
jàan yyn bâan rěkhâ Wouldn't you like
to look at some-
thing else?

THAI BASIC COURSE

khonsýy:	khun mi araj bâaŋ khráp	What do you have?
khonkhăaj:	thaanóon mi khrýaŋŋən, khrýaŋthóm, khrýaŋthooŋ lēs w kô phétphlooŋ thaan khwăa mi khrýaŋ khŋən, khrýaŋ thooŋ sămrít ka máajkēs alàk	Over there's silver- ware, niello ware, gold, and jewelry. On the right there is lacquerware, bronzeware, and wood carvings.
khonkhăaj:	ráan (khŋoŋ) raw mi khŋoŋ háj lýak mâak kwăa thîiýyn	Our shop has a better selection than other places.

37.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) Measurement. In Thailand the metric system, the 'English' system, and the (old) Thai system are used in measurement. Some things are measured in one system and some in another, and some things can be measured in more than one system.

<u>System used</u>	<u>Things being measured</u>
Either metric or 'English'	length, width, height of small objects (tables, etc.)
Metric	distance, weight, content
Metric	length of fabrics, except silk in Bangkok
(Old) Thai	land area

Measuring units

<u>Metric system</u>		<u>'English' system</u>	
méet	'meter'	níw	'inch'
sen(timéet)	'centimeter'	fút	'foot'

THAI BASIC COURSE

kiloo(méet)	'kilometer'	lăa	'yard'
kram	'gram'	lăa khrÿŋ	'one and one half yards'
sen(tikram)	'centigram'	khrÿŋ lăa	'half yard'
kiloo(kram)	'kilogram'	sakruu	'one fourth yard'
lít	'liter'	mai	'mile'

The Thai system will be taken up later.

b) ráp means 'to guarantee, certify, or vouch for something'.

ráp dâj could be translated 'You can take my word for it'.

c) cháj means 'to use up, require, take' (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)

1. of time: naanníi tŏŋ cháj weelaa sŏŋ pii

This work takes 2 years.

2. of people: naanníi tŏŋ cháj câwnâathŏi lăaj khon

This work requires a lot of personnel.

d) lÿak means 'to choose or select'.

khŏŋ hăj lÿak 'selections' (of merchandise, things, etc.)

thaan lÿak 'choice' (as a means)

kaan lÿak 'Choice, selection' (as an action)

lÿak + PERSON + pen + POSITION, TITLE 'to choose someone to be in a certain position'

khăw lÿak khăw pen prathaan khŏŋ samoosŏn

'They chose him as President of the club.'

lÿaktân 'to elect' (as in a political election)

khăw dâj ráp lÿaktân pen prathaanaathŏodii khŏŋ saharát

'He was elected President of the United States.'

THAI BASIC COURSE

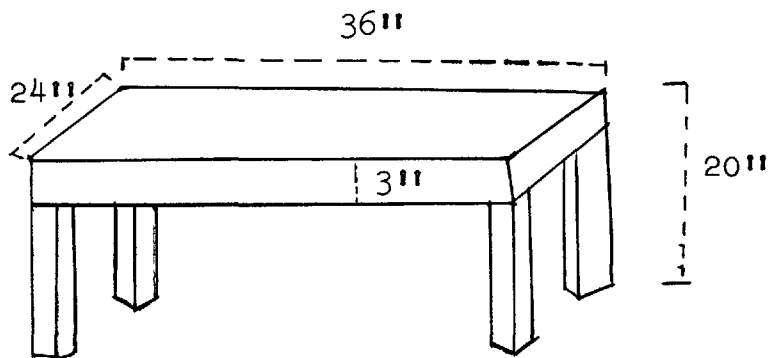
'The rent for this house is
not high.'

'This house doesn't rent
for a high price.'

Although both members of the pairs of sentences above
are correct, the second type is normally used.

Chart 1:

DIMENSIONS



tó tuaní	kwâaŋ	24 níw
	jaaw	36 níw
	nǎa	3 níw
	sǔuŋ	20 níw

This table is 24" wide.

36" long.

3" thick.

20" high.

THAI BASIC COURSE

37.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phâajàanníi tàt sýakaankeeṅ phûuchaaj cháj phâa kìi lǎa
For this kind of material, how many yards does it take to make a jacket and a pair of trousers?
2. ṅaanníi, tōṅ cháj khontham kìi khon.
How many people does this work require?
3. ṅaanníi, tōṅ cháj weelaa kìi pii.
How many years does this work take?
4. ṅaan phátthanaa thīnīi tōṅ cháj cāwnāathīi lǎaj khon.
How many personnel are needed for this community development?
5. khroonkaanníi tōṅ cháj ṅen māak.
This project costs a lot of money.

b) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phāaníi sǐi māj tòk lǎej. ráprōṅ dāj.
This fabric is colorfast. (I) can guarantee (it).
2. phûuchaaj khonníi pen khondii. ráprōṅ dāj.
This man is a good person. (I) can attest to (it).
3. khōṅ thīi ráanníi pen khōṅ dii thīisut. ráprōṅ dāj.
The merchandise here is the best. (I) can vouch for (it).
4. aahǎan thīnīi aròj thīisut. ráprōṅ dāj.
The food here is the best. (I) can guarantee (it).
5. rót khanníi khryân dii māak. ráprōṅ dāj.
This car has very good engine. (I) can vouch for that.
6. bāan lǎṅ níi khāachāw māj phseṅ kēnpaj. ráprōṅ dāj.
The rent of this house is not too high. (I) can guarantee it. (You can take my word for it).

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. ráanníi mii khǒŋ hâj lýak mâak kwàa thîiỳn. ráprɔŋ dâj.
This store has better selections than others. (I) can guarantee it.
8. khrȳan̄thǒm ráanníi dii kwàa thîiỳn. ráprɔŋ dâj.
The nielloware in this shop is better than other places. (I) can guarantee it.

c) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləej ráprɔŋ dâj.
The color of this fabric doesn't fade. (I) can guarantee.
2. khon khonníi pen khondii ráprɔŋ dâj
This man is a good person. (I) can guarantee.
3. khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dii thîisùt ráprɔŋ dâj
Things in this shop are of the best quality. (I) can guarantee.
4. aahǎan thîi nîi arəj thîisùt. ráprɔŋ dâj.
The food here is the best (I) can guarantee.
5. rôt khanníi khrȳan̄ dii mâak. ráprɔŋ dâj.
This car has a very good engine. (I) can guarantee.

Pattern 2

- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa phâaníi sǐi mâj tòk ləej.
I can guarantee that this fabric is colorfast.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khon khonníi pen khondii.
I can guarantee that this person is a good man.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa khǒŋ thîi ráanníi pen khǒŋ dii thîisùt.
I can guarantee that things in this shop are of the best quality.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa aahǎan thîiníi arəj thîisùt.
I can guarantee that the food here is the best.
- phǒm ráprɔŋ dâj wâa rôt khanníi khrȳan̄ dii mâak
I can guarantee that this car has a very good engine.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>6. bâan lǎn níi khâachâw mâj
 phɛɛŋ kəɛnpaj
 ráprɔɔŋ dâj
 The rent for this house
 is not too expensive.
 (I) can guarantee.</p> | <p>phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa bâan lǎn níi
 khâachâw mâj phɛɛŋ kəɛnpaj.
 I can guarantee that the rent
 for this house is not too
 high.</p> |
| <p>7. khrýaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi níi
 dii kwâa thîi yyn
 ráprɔɔŋ dâj
 The jewelry here is
 better than at other
 places. (I) can guarantee.</p> | <p>phǒm ráprɔɔŋ dâj wâa
 khrýaŋ thɔɔŋ thîi níi dii
 kwâa thîi yyn
 I can guarantee that the
 jewelry here is better than
 other places.</p> |

d) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. nánsǎy books	khun ca aw araj What do you want?	aw nánsǎy Books.
2. thaw grey	khun ca aw sǎi araj. What color would you like?	aw sǎi thaw I want grey.
3. sǎam lǎa three yards	khun ca aw thâwraj How much do you want?	aw sǎam lǎa I want three yards.
4. an jàj The big one.	khun ca aw an nǎj Which one do you want?	aw an jàj I want the big one.
5. lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat The 4,000 Baht one	khun ca aw bâan lǎŋ nǎj Which house do you want?	aw lǎŋ sǎi phan bàat. I want the 4,000 Baht one.
6. jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind	khun ca aw phâa jàaŋ nǎj Which kind of fabric would you like?	aw jàaŋ dii thîisùt The best kind.

e) Sentence Construction Drill

The instructor will ask questions so as to elicit the answers given in the cues, as in the following example:

- | | |
|--|--|
| T: aw araj khráp | What do you want (to get)? |
| S: phâa mǎjthaj khráp | Thai silk. |
| T: phâa jàan nǎj | What quality of cloth? |
| S: jàan dii thĭisùt | The best quality. |
| T: aw kĭi lǎa khráp | How many yards? |
| S: sǎam lǎa khráp | 3 yards. |
| T: aw phâa mǎjthaj jàan
dii 4 lǎa, chĭj máj
khráp | You want 4 yards of good
quality Thai silk, right? |
| S: mâj chĭj, aw phâa
mǎjthaj jàan dii
thĭisùt sǎam lǎa | No, I want three yards of the
best quality Thai silk. |

Use the following sets of cue words in the same manner as above:

1. sĭa, dii, sǒn tua, sĭi khǎaw
2. sĭyanôok ka kaankeen, dii thĭisùt, nĭn chùt, sĭi námtaan
3. nánjsĭy phaasǎa thaj, sǒn lĕm, diidii
4. phátlom, jàandii, jĭipùn, nĭn an

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Question and Construction Drill

Pretend you don't know what the other person said, and ask a question so as to get a repetition of the original statement.

<u>First Answer</u>	<u>Second Question</u>
1. sǒŋ lǎa two yards	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lǎa</u> } How many yards did you say you want?
2. sǐi thaw	aw <u>sǐi araj</u> nakhráp What color?
3. phâamǎj silk	aw { araj } nakhráp { <u>phâa araj</u> } What did you say you want?
4. jàaŋnóon That kind	aw <u>jàaŋ nǎj</u> nakhráp What kind did you say you want?
5. nỳn chùt one set	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi chùt</u> } How much did you say you want?
6. khrỳaŋ thǒm Nielloware	aw <u>araj</u> nakhráp What did you say you want?
7. jàaŋ raakhaa pèet síp bàat The 80 Baht one.	aw <u>jàaŋnǎj</u> nakhráp? What kind did you say you want?
8. sǎam lêm Three	aw { thâwràj } nakhráp { <u>kìi lêm</u> } How many did you say you want?
9. tua sǐikhǎaw The white one	aw <u>tuanǎj</u> nakhráp Which one did you say you want?

THAI BASIC COURSE

10. an thîi jùu thaan aw an nǎj nakhráp
kwǎa
The one on the right Which one did you say you want?

g) Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

- ráanníi mi khǒon hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
This store has a better selection of
merchandise than other places.
1. phâamǎj ráan níi mi phâamǎj hâj lýak mâak
kwàa thîiyyin
silk This store has a better selection of
silk than other places.
2. nánsǎy ráanníi mi nánsǎy hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
books This store has a better selection of
books than other places.
3. kháw kháw mi nánsǎy hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
They They have a better selection of
books than other places.
4. bâanchâw kháw mi bâanchâw hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
houses for rent They have a better selection of houses
for rent than other places.
5. khǒon kháw mi khǒon hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
things They have a better selection of
merchandise than other places.
6. araj kháw mi araj hâj lýak mâak kwàa
thîiyyin
things They have a better selection of things
than other places.

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
1. nánsýy sǒŋ lêm níi, khun ca l̄yák lêm nǎj Of these two books which one would you choose?	phǒm aw lêm nǒon I'd take that one.
2. chianmǎj ka krunthêep. khun ca l̄yák j̄uu canwát nǎj. Between Chiangmai and Bangkok which province would you choose to live in?	phǒm(ca) l̄yák j̄uu krunthêep I'd choose to live in Bangkok.
3. thâa khun l̄yák dâj, khun ca l̄yâk pen mǒo rý khruu If you can have a choice, would you rather be a doctor, or a teacher?	phǒm l̄yák pen mǒo I'd rather be a doctor.
4. khun ca l̄yák j̄uu th̄iinǎj Where will you (choose to) live?	phǒm mâj mii thaan l̄yák I have no choice.
5. khon sǒŋ khonníi khun ca l̄yák khraj pen prathaanaa th̄ípboodii Of these two persons, which one would you choose for President?	phǒm khít wâa phǒm ca l̄yák khon r̄êek pen prathaanaa th̄ípboodii I think I'd choose the first one for President.
6. thâa khun l̄yák dâj, khun ca l̄yák pen ph̄uuj̄ŋ rý ph̄uuchaaj If you had a choice, would you rather be a woman or a man?	pen ph̄uuchaaj dii kwâa kh̄rap It's better to be a man.
7. thammaj kháw t̄ŋ cháj weelaa h̄aa roonrian h̄aj l̄uuk j̄uu l̄aj dyan Why did it take him many months to find a school for his children?	phró kháw j̄aak ca l̄yák roonrian diidii h̄aj l̄uuk kháw rian Because he wanted to choose good schools for them.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>8. thammaj kháw ca tòn
paj wíatnaam
Why does he have to go
to Vietnam?</p> | <p>phró thaan râatchakaan lýak
kháw paj
Because the government has
chosen him to go.</p> |
| <p>9. khun ca lýak khâarâatchakaan
paj duu naan thîi tàan
prathêet kîi khon
How many government offi-
cials are going to go go
abroad on an observation
tour?</p> | <p>raw ca lýak (khâarâatchakaan)
paj (duu naan thîi tàan prathêet)
3 khon
We'll choose three government
officials.</p> |
| <p>10. khun ca lýak khâarâatchakaan
paj duu naan tàan prathêet
càak thîinǎj bâan
Where are you going to choose
the government officials to
go abroad from?</p> | <p>raw ca lýak càak mahǎawítthajalaj
lé krasuan tàan tàan
We'll choose them from univer-
sities and different ministries.</p> |

1) Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. níw
kîi níw
kwâan kîi níw
nâa kwâan kîi níw
phâa níi nâa kwâan kîi níw</p> | <p>Inch(es)
How many inches?
How many inches wide?
How many inches wide (for fabric)?
How wide is this fabric?</p> |
| <p>2. lǎa
kîi lǎa
jaaw kîi lǎa
chýak sên níi jaaw kîi lǎa</p> | <p>Yard(s)
How many yards?
How many yards long?
How many yards long is this
rope?</p> |
| <p>3. kiloo (méet)
kîi kiloo
jaaw kîi kiloo
thanǎn sǎaj níi jaaw kîi kiloo</p> | <p>kilo(s)
How many kilos?
How many kilos long?
How many kilos is this road?
How long is this road?</p> |
| <p>4. méet
kwâan kîi méet
thanǎn sǎaj níi kwâan kîi
méet</p> | <p>Meter(s)
How many meter(s) wide?
How wide is this road?</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. kiloo (kram)
kii kiloo
nàk kii kiloo
khǒŋ chĩn nĩi nàk kii
kilo or kilos | kilo(s)
How many kilos?
How many kilos by weight?
How many kilos does this thing weigh? |
| 6. thâwràj
nǎa thâwràj
nǎnsǎy lêmńĩi nǎa thâwràj | How much?
How thick?
How thick is this book? |
| 7. thâwràj
sũuŋ thâwràj
khun sũuŋ thâwràj | How much?
How tall?
How tall are you? |

j) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. phāanĩi kwāaŋ thâwràj this fabric wide how much	phāanĩi nāa kwāaŋ thâwràj How wide is this fabric?
2. thanǒn mĩttraphāap jaaw kiloo Friendship Highway long kilo	thanǒn mĩttraphāap jaaw kii kiloo. How many kilometers long is the Friendship Highway?
3. tỳk lǎnnán sũuŋ thâwràj this building tall how much	tỳk lǎnnán sũuŋ thâwràj How tall is this building?
4. nǎnsǎy lêmńán nǎa nāa that book thick, pages	nǎnsǎy lêmńán nǎa kii nāa How {many pages} is {thick} } this book?

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. khǒŋ chínní
nàk
kíloo
this thing
heavy
kilo
- khǒŋ chínní nàk kí kiloo
How many kilos does this thing weigh?
6. kradaan phènní
nǎa
níw
this board
thick
inches
- kradaan phènní nǎa kí níw
How {many inches} is
{thick} this board?
7. khun
nàk
thâwràj
you
heavy, how much
- khun nàk thâwràj
How much do you weigh?

37.4 EXERCISES

- a) Pretend you are buying material for making some article of clothing. You take the part of the buyer; another student, the seller.
- b) Discuss the dimensions of various objects in the room.
- c) One student describes a certain object by giving its dimensions and other characteristics (such as color, price, use, etc.) of it. Another student tries to guess what is being described.
- d) Find out the weight and height of everyone in the room, then make comparison such as 'John is 10 pounds heavier than Mary', etc. (poon 'pound' may be used.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

37.5 VOCABULARY

an	classifier for inanimate objects, careless speakers often use <u>an</u> as a substitute for other classifiers
aw	to want (to have) cf. <u>tônkaan</u>
cháj	to use up, require, take (an amount of time, effort, people, etc.)
chín	piece (of anything whole), hence classifier for piece of clothing, furniture, bread, meat, bones, work (a specific task), etc.
chom	to look at, to admire, look at with pleasure, to praise
chút	classifier for suit (e.g. of clothing), suite (of furniture), set (e.g. of ornaments, glassware, books), for a committee, cabinet (of ministers, for a team)
chÿak	rope, cord, classifier for elephants
duu naan	to observe the operation (e.g. of a system), observe (something) in operation
fút	foot, English system
kaan lýak	choice, selection (as an action)
kaankeen	trousers, pants
kèsalàk	to carve or chisel (as wood)
khǎen	to lacquer
khǎon hâj lýak	selections (of merchandise, things, etc.)
khǎon kèsalàk	carvings

THAI BASIC COURSE

khroonkaan	project
khryâṅ	engine; -ware (see below)
khryâṅkhǎen	lacquerware
khryâṅṅən	silverware
khryâṅphét khryâṅthooṅ	'jewelry'
khryâṅthǎm	nielloware
khryâṅthooṅ	things of gold
khryâṅthooṅsǎmrít	bronzeware
khryṅ lǎa	half yard
kiloo(kram)	kilogram metric system
kiloo(méet)	kilometer metric system
kradaan	board
kram	gram metric system
lǎakhrṅ	one and one half yards
lít	liter metric system
lṅak	to choose or select
lṅaktâṅ	to elect (as in a political election)
máaj kèsalak	woodcarvings
mai	mile
méet	meter metric system
nâa	width (for fabric)
nàk	to be heavy (in weight), to be hard (as of work)

THAI BASIC COURSE

níw	inch (English system)
nôok	external
naan pháththanaa	community development
nen	silver
phét	diamond
phétphlōoj	jewelry
phlōoj	precious stones, such as sapphires, rubies, etc.
poon	pound (weight)
pramaan	about, to approximate, to estimate
prathaan	president, chairman
ráprouj dâj	guarantee, can guarantee
săaj	1. classifier for rivers, canals, roads, for ornamental chains, necklaces for wires, cables, and for other line - like objects. 2. line (esp. in the fig. sense of a channel, route, as in 'telephone line')
sakruu	one fourth yard
samoosōon	club, association
sen (tikram)	centigram metric system
sen (timéet)	centimeter metric system
sâa	refers to top garments, such as shirts and blouses; woman's dress
sâa kaankeen	suit of clothes (for men) any ensemble of clothes that includes an upper garment and slacks or pants. (e.g. women's blouse and slacks, children's coveralls, pajamas, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

s̄yānōk	jacket
tət	to cut, sever
thaaŋ l̄yāk	choice (as a means)
thōm	niello process
thoonl̄yāŋ	the market term for bronze
thoon̄sāmrit	bronze
thūŋ	a bag
thaw	grey
thūan	exactly (in amount), complete (exact in amount), in a round number
tòk	to fade (of colors), to drop, to fall to fall (straight) down (from, into, onto) to fall or drop off, decrease, diminish, to set (of the sun, moon)

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

38.0 BASIC DIALOG: Shopping for Toilet Articles

khonkhǎaj:	sýy araj khráp	What do you want to buy?
khonsýy:	prɛɛnsǐifan miɪ máj	Do you have tooth-brushes?
khonkhǎaj:	miɪ khráp	We do.
khonsýy:	khǒɔ duu nòj, dâj máj	May I see them?
khonkhǎaj:	nǐi khráp	Here they are.
	jàaɲní an la 8 bàat,	This kind is 8 baht each.
	jàaɲnán 12 bàat	That kind, 12.
khonsýy:	thǐi thùuk kwàa nǐi miɪ máj	You have anything cheaper?
khonkhǎaj:	mâj miɪ khráp	No.
khonsýy:	ɲán, aw jàaɲ pɛɛt bàat nýɲ an	In that case I'll take the 8 baht one.
khonkhǎaj:	ráp araj ìik máj khráp	Want anything else?
khonsýy:	aw sabùu láks kônnyɲ	I'd like a bar of Lux soap.
khonkhǎaj:	nôok rý naj khráp	Imported or domestic.
khonsýy:	aw sabùu nôok, léɛwkô jaasǐifan lòot lék lòot nýɲ, burli klètthoɔɲ nýɲ soɔɲ ka májkhǐit nýɲ klàk	Imported, and one small tube of tooth-paste, a package of 'Gold Flake' cigarettes, and a small box of matches.

THAI BASIC COURSE

khonkhǎaj:	jaasǎifan jǎihǎo araj khráp	What brand of tooth paste?
khonsýy:	araj kǎ dǎj	Any kind (brand).
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, thánmòt 27 bàat 50 satàan	Here you are. That'll be ฿.27.50.
	(khonsýy sòn hǎj khonkhǎaj sǎamsíp bàat)	The customer gives the salesman 30 baht.
khonkhǎaj:	nǎi khráp, nenthon, sǎon bàat háasíp satàan. khǎopkhun máak nakhráp, wanlǎn cheen maa ùtnǎn lǎk nakhráp	Here is your change, 2.50 baht. Thank you very much. Please come and patronize me again next time.

38.1 VOCABULARY NOTES

a) Noun Compounds

preesǎifan 'toothbrush': preesǎn 'brush' + sǎi 'polish'
+ fan 'tooth'

jaasǎifan 'toothpaste': jaa 'medicine, chemical compound'
+ sǎi + fan

sabùuhǎom 'toilet soap': sabùu 'soap' + hǎom 'smell sweet'

sabùusákphâa 'laundry soap, detergent': sabùu + sák 'wash'
+ phâa 'clothing'

mǎjkhǎit(faj) 'matches': mǎj 'wood' + khǎit 'strike,
scratch' + faj 'fire'

b) jǎihǎo means 'brand' or 'trade name'.

Observe the use in the following sentences:

THAI BASIC COURSE

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót jîihôo araj What make of car is it?	fòot a Ford.
(2) sabùu jîihôo araj What brand of soap is it?	láks Lux.
(3) wíthajú jîihôo araj What brand of radio is it?	aa sii ee R.C.A.

- c) If araj 'what kind' is used after the noun in a question, several answers are possible, as is shown in the examples below:

<u>Question</u>	<u>Answer</u>
(1) rót araj	rót fòot Ford
	rót ameerikan An American car
	rót sapòot A sport car
(2) sabùu araj	sabùu hǒom toilet soap
	sabùu láks Lux soap

- d) Brand names are sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising, as in the following examples:

(1) sabùu traá <u>nók kĕsw</u>	Parrot brand soap
(2) kratìknám traá <u>nókjuun</u>	Peacock brand thermos
(3) phâa traá <u>lûukthóo</u>	Peach brand cloth
(4) phènsĭaŋ traá <u>kratàaj</u>	Rabbit brand records

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) In the case of some very well-known products the trade name may be the main identifying feature of the name:

(1) jaa traa sýa Tiger (brand) balm

(2) jaa hǒm traa máa Horse brand nice-smelling inhalants

f) nǒk and naj.

(khǒn) nǒk is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand.

(khǒn) naj is used to refer to products made in Thailand.

Observe the following examples:

(1) sabùu nǒk 'Imported soap'

sabùu naj 'local soap'

sabùu thaj 'Thai soap'

(2) nákrian nǒk 'Thais who were educated abroad'

nákrian naj 'Thais educated in Thailand'

But notice the difference in usage in the following examples:

khonnǒk 'outsider' or 'layman'

khonnaj 'insider'

THAI BASIC COURSE

38.2 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) Noun Classifiers¹

In 4.1 you were given a list of classifiers and a general description of classifiers. In succeeding lessons you have been introduced to more of them. You are now aware that in many types of Noun Phrases the classifier must occur with the noun; therefore, it is imperative that you know which classifier is associated with which noun.

In general it is probably just as simple to learn the classifier of a noun at the same time that you learn the noun (just as you might learn the gender class of a noun in German or French) without reference to the meaning of the noun. However, since there are some cases in which the classifier of a noun is predictable from the meaning of the noun, a more nearly complete list of classifiers is given below. This may help you remember the ones you have already had better, since it's easier to see the 'logic' of the system if you already know the nouns and their classifiers, and it should help you guess which classifier to use with nouns you will learn.

<u>Classifier</u>	<u>Reference</u>
(1) khon	Ordinary people, names of professions, members of the family
<u>khruu 2 khon</u> <u>lûuk 3 khon</u>	'two teachers' 'three children'
(2) oŋ	Buddha images
(3) tua	Non-human things with human parts (legs, arms, etc.)
<u>măa 2 tua</u> <u>kaankeen 1 tua</u>	'two dogs' 'a pair of pants'
An exception is <u>burîi nỳn tua</u>	'a cigarette'

¹The information given here is taken from Noss, 106. Examples have been added to make the points clearer.

THAI BASIC COURSE

(11) hòo refers to packages or things wrapped in paper.

buríi nỳn hòo 'a carton of cigarettes'

(12) klòn refers to a small carton or plastic box.

sabùu nỳn klòn 'a box of soap'

(13) an is a very common classifier for inanimate objects. Careless speakers often use an as a substitute for other classifiers. The examples given in the drills are the nouns that are usually used with an.

(14) With many noun compounds the classifier and its noun referent are identical. Some examples are:

tûujen nỳn tûu¹ one refrigerator

chútrápkhèek nỳn chútt
furniture

tawkéess nỳn taw one gas stove

rûupmyanṭhaj nỳn rûup¹ one picture of Thailand

khryânsákphâa nỳn khryân one washing machine

bajmáaj nỳn baj one leaf

tian nỳn tian one bed

b) Nominalizations

thîi 'that which, the one(s) which, such ones as, etc.' serves as a nominalizer (i.e. an agent for creating nouns) of Verb Phrases (and Sentences) as in the following example:

¹baj may also be used.

THAI BASIC COURSE

NOMINAL		
Nominalizer	Verb Phrase	Determiner
thîi	thùuk kwàa	nîi
(that which)	(is cheaper)	(this)
'that which is cheaper'		

38.3 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (Classifiers)

- | | | | |
|----|------|---|--|
| 1. | an | prænsǎifan nỳn an
thîi pèetkrapǎn nỳn an
thîi tii khàj 1 an
tawrǎit 1 an
phátlom 1 an | One toothbrush
one can opener
One (egg) beater
one iron
one electric fan |
| 2. | dâam | pàakaa 1 dâam | one pen |
| 3. | thên | dinsǎo 1 thên | one pencil |
| 4. | lòot | jaasǎifan 1 lòot | one tube of tooth-
paste |
| 5. | sỏn | burîi 1 sỏn

sỏncòtmǎaj 1 sỏn | one package of
cigarettes

one envelope |
| 6. | hỏo | burîi 1ỏo

májkhít 1ỏo | One carton of
cigarettes

one big package
of matches |

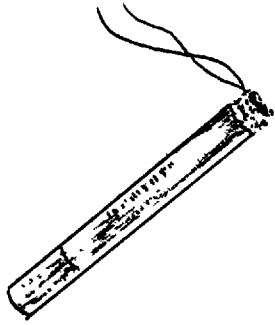
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. phèn	kradaat 1 phèn	one piece of paper
	rûup 1 phèn	one (copy of a) photo
	kradaan 1 phèn	one piece of board
	phěenthîi 1 phèn	one copy of a map
8. kôn	sabûu 1 kôn	one bar of soap
	námtaan 1 kôn	one lump/cube of sugar
	námkhěeη 1 kôn	a piece of ice, an ice cube
9. chabàp	náηsýyphim 1 chabàp	one newspaper
	còtmǎaj 1 chabàp	one letter
10. lêm	náηsýy 1 lêm	one book
	samùt 1 lêm	one textbook
11. baj	krápǎw 1 baj	one pocketbook, handbag, briefcase, suitcase
	(thonabàt) baj la róoj	one 100 baht bank-note
	rûup 1 baj	One (example of a) picture
	tûu 1 baj	one cabinet (as a container)
12. tua	tó 1 tua	one table/desk
	tó rîitphâa 1 tua	one ironing board
	kâwîi nỳη tua	one chair
	sýa 1 tua	one blouse
	kaaηkeen 1 tua	one pair of pants
	kaprooη 1 tua	one (woman's) skirt

THAI BASIC COURSE

13.	khrÿaŋ	wítthajú 1 khrÿaŋ	one radio
		thi1wii thoorathát } 1 khrÿaŋ	one TV set
		khrÿaŋsákphâa 1 khrÿaŋ	one washing machine
		khrÿaŋpèet krapǎoŋ 1 khrÿaŋ	one electric can opener
		khrÿaŋ pràpaakàat 1 khrÿaŋ	one air conditioner
14.	chút	khrÿaŋkhrua 1 chút	one set of kitchen equipment
		sÿaphâa 1 chút	one suit of clothes
		chútrápkhèek 1 chút	one set of living- room furniture

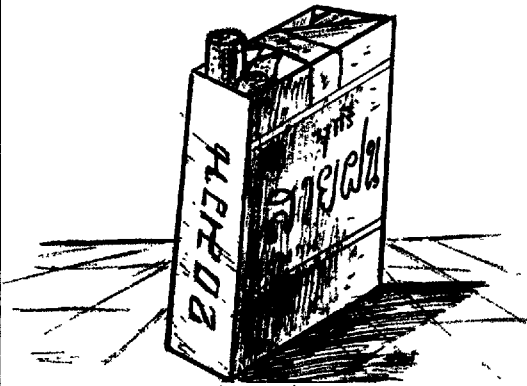
THAI BASIC COURSE



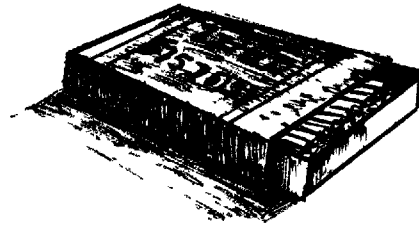
burii mỳn } tua
 } muan



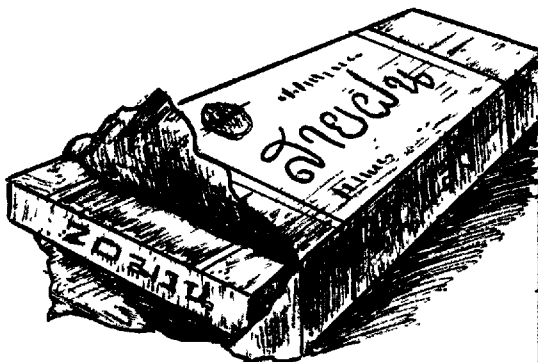
májkhít (faj) nỳn kâan



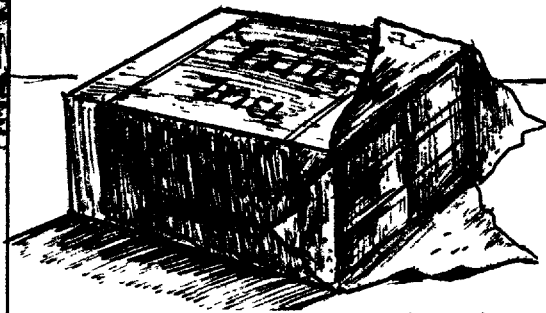
burii nỳn sỏon



májkhít (faj) nỳn klàk



burii nỳn hòo



májkhít (faj) nỳn hòo

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Response Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
1. præŋsɿifan nỳŋ Toothbrush	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) præŋsɿifan nỳŋ an (I want) one tooth- brush.
2. jaasɿifan sǎŋ Toothpaste	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(aw) jaasɿifan sǎŋ lòt (I want) two tubes of toothpaste.
3. burìi sǎŋ Cigarettes	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) burìi sǎŋ sǎŋ (I want) two pack- ages of cigarettes.
4. sabùu hǎm sǎam Toilet soap	sỳy araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) sabùu hǎm sǎam kǎm (I want) three bars of toilet soap.
5. májkhìit nỳŋ Matches	ráp araj khráp What do you want?	(sỳy) májkhìit nỳŋ klàk (I want) one box of matches.
6. sabùu láks jàaŋŋǎk sǎŋ Imported Lux toilet soap Two	aw araj khráp What do you want?	aw sabùu láks jàaŋŋǎk sǎŋ kǎm I want two bars of imported Lux toilet soap.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>7. prəɛŋsɯ́ifan
khanàat lék
nỳn

Small toothbrush
One</p> | <p>aw araj khráp

What would you
like?</p> | <p>sýy prəɛŋsɯ́ifan

khanàat lék nỳn an

One small toothbrush.</p> |
| <p>8. jaasɯ́ifan
lòot lék jàaŋŋòok,
nỳn

Imported tooth-
paste, small tube
One</p> | <p>ráp araj khráp

What would you
like?</p> | <p>aw jaasɯ́ifan

jàaŋŋòok
lòotlék
nỳn lòot

One small tube
imported toothpaste.</p> |

c) Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. <u>sabùu</u> nỳn kōon

<u>sabùu hǎom</u> nỳn kōon

<u>sabùu (hǎom) láks</u> nỳn kōon

<u>sabùu (hǎom) láks jàaŋŋòok</u>
nỳn kōon</p> | <p>One bar of soap.

One bar of toilet soap.

One bar of Lux toilet soap.

One bar of imported Lux
toilet soap.</p> |
| <p>2. <u>pàakkaa</u> nỳn dâam

<u>pàakkaa páakkêe</u> nỳn dâam

<u>pàakkaa páakkêe jàaŋŋii</u>
nỳn dâam.

<u>pàakkaa páakkêe jàaŋŋii,</u>
<u>khanàat lék</u> nỳn dâam.</p> | <p>One pen

One Parker pen

One good Parker pen

One good Parker pen, small
size.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 3. | <u>jaasĭifan</u> nỳn lòt | One toothpaste |
| | <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa</u> nỳn lòt | One Ipana toothpaste |
| | <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa jàaṅṅòk</u>
nỳn lòt | One imported Ipana toothpaste |
| | <u>jaasĭifan ajpaanaa</u>
<u>jàaṅṅòk,</u> } khaṅaāt
} lòt
<u>jàj</u> nỳn lòt | One imported Ipana toothpaste,
big size/large tube |
| 4. | <u>prēsĭifan</u> nỳn an | One toothbrush |
| | <u>prēsĭifan dóktêe wés</u> nỳn an | One Dr. West toothbrush |
| | <u>prēsĭifan dóktêe wés jàaṅ</u>
<u>òṅ</u> nỳn an | One soft Dr. West toothbrush |
| 5. | <u>burĭi</u> nỳn soṅ | One package of cigarettes |
| | <u>burĭi thaj</u> nỳn soṅ | One package of Thai cigarettes |
| | <u>burĭi thaj jàaṅṅii</u> nỳn soṅ | One package of good Thai
cigarettes |
| | <u>burĭi thaj jàaṅṅii jĭihò</u>
<u>arajkòdâj</u> nỳn soṅ | One package of Thai cigarettes
of any brand |
| 6. | <u>rót</u> nỳn khan | One car |
| | <u>rót ameerikan</u> nỳn khan | One American car |
| | <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u> nỳn
khan | One beautiful American car |
| | <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u>
<u>jàaṅṅii</u> nỳn khan | One good, beautiful American
car |
| | <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u>
<u>jàaṅṅii khaṅaātjǎj</u> nỳn khan | One big good and beautiful
American car |
| | <u>rót ameerikan suǎjsuǎj</u>
<u>jàaṅṅii khaṅaātjǎj, jĭihò</u>
<u>arajkòdâj</u> nỳn khan | One big good and beautiful
American car of any make. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

d) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	thîi <u>thùuk</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything cheaper?
1. dii Good	thîi <u>dii</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything better?
2. suǎj Beautiful, pretty	thîi <u>suǎj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything prettier?
3. phsɛŋ Expensive	thîi <u>phsɛŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything more expensive?
4. jàj Big	thîi <u>jàj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything bigger?
5. lék Small	thîi <u>lék</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything smaller?
6. nâakwâaŋ Wide (Fabric)	thîi <u>nâakwâaŋ</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything wider?
7. màj New	thîi <u>màj</u> kwàa níi mii máj Do you have anything newer?

THAI BASIC COURSE

e) Sentence Expansion Drill

Cue

Continued Pattern

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. prəɛŋsɿifan jàaŋní

phɛɛŋ paj

This kind of toothbrush
is too expensive. | prəɛŋsɿifan jàaŋní phɛɛŋ paj,
thíi thùuk kwàa níi mii máj

This kind of toothbrush is too
expensive. Do you have any-
thing cheaper? |
| 2. rót khanníi mâj suǎj

This car is not
beautiful. | rót khanníi mâj suǎj, thíi suǎj
kwàa níi mii máj

This car is not beautiful. Do
you have anything better looking? |
| 3. bâan lǎŋníi lék

kəen paj

This house is too
small. | bâan lǎŋníi lék kəen pāj, thíi jàj
kwàa níi mii máj

This house is too small. Do you
have anything bigger? |
| 4. phāaníi nāakhēɛp

kəen paj

This fabric is too
narrow. | phāaníi nāakhēɛp kəen paj, thíi
kwāaŋ kwàa níi mii máj

This fabric is too narrow. Do
you have anything wider? |
| 5. kaŋkəeŋ tuaníi kàw

paj

These pants are too
old. | kaŋkəeŋ tuaníi kàw paj, thíi màj
kwàa níi mii máj

These pants are too old. Do you
have anything newer? |
| 6. s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj

This shirt is too big. | s̄ya tuaníi jàj paj, thíi lék kwàa
níi mii máj

This shirt is too big. Do you
have anything smaller? |
| 7. nāŋs̄ȳy lēm̄níi jâak kəen
paj

This book is too difficult. | nāŋs̄ȳy lēm̄níi jâak paj, thíi n̄aaj
kwàa níi mii máj.

This book is too difficult. Do
you have anything easier? |

THAI BASIC COURSE

38.4 EXERCISES

a) Have one student take the part of a store clerk and another that of a customer. Have them go through the routine of purchasing various items, such as:

- (a) a pack of cigarettes, (b) two bars of toilet soap,
- (c) a tube of toothpaste, (d) some matches, etc.

The clerk asks the brand, kind, and size the customer wants. When he is told, he indicates what the price is. Then the customer inquires if there is anything cheaper (better, etc.). Then he gives the clerk a bill and asks for change.

38.5 VOCABULARY

aa sii ee	R.C.A.
ajpaanaa	Ipana
an	classifier for inanimate objects
ééspajrin	aspirin
on	classifier for Buddha images, King, Queen
òn	soft, tender
ùtnǔn	to support, assist (financially) to patronize
bajmáaj	leaf
dóktêe wés	Dr. West
fan	tooth
fòot	a Ford (brand name)
hò	carton, classifier for packages or things wrapped in paper

THAI BASIC COURSE

hǒm	to smell sweet
jaa	medicine, chemical compound
jaa hǒm	nice-smelling inhalants
jaasǐifan	toothpaste
jǐihǒ	brand or trade name
kâan	classifier for matches
kaproon	woman's skirt
khǐit	to strike, scratch
khonnaj	insider
khonnǒk	outsider or layman
khryǎnjon	engine
khryǎn pèet krapǒn	an electric can opener
khryǎnsákphâa	washing machine
khryǎn tii khàj	an electric (egg) beater
klàk	small case or box, classifier for things in such containers hence, box of matches, etc.
klètthoon	Gold Flake(name of cigarettes)
klòn	a small carton or plastic box
kôn	bump, cube, bar classifier for bumpy objects, e.g. rocks, lumps of clay or sugar, cubes of sugar, chunks or hunks or coal or charcoal, bricks, broken bricks, cake of soap, clouds, and figuratively, sums of money
kratàaj	rabbit

THAI BASIC COURSE

kratìknàm	thermos bottle
làks	Lux (brand name)
lòot	classifier for tube, tube of toothpaste
lûukthóo	peach (a Chinese loan word)
máa	horse
máj	wood
májkhìit (faj)	matches
mét	classifier for small round objects (pills, etc.)
muan	classifier for cigarette, cigar
(khǎoŋ)naj	is used to refer to products made in Thailand or in country
nákriian naj	Thais educated in Thailand
nákriian nǎok	Thais who were educated abroad
nók	bird
nókjuuŋ	Peacock
nókkêew	Parrot
(khǎoŋ)nǎok	is used to refer to any product made outside of Thailand or country
ŋanthoon	change (money returned)
páak kêe	Parker
phátlom	electric fan
phènsǎn	records (phonograph)
prɛŋ	brush

THAI BASIC COURSE

prɛɛŋsǐfan	toothbrush
sabùuhǒm	toilet soap
sabùu(láks)	(Lux) soap
sabùu naj	local soap
sabùu nǒk	imported soap
sabùu sákphâa	laundry soap
sabùu thaj	Thai soap
sák	to wash (cloth only), to launder
satàaŋ	satang
sǐi	polish
sooŋ	classifier for cigarettes or envelope
sooŋcòtmǎaj	envelope
sǎa	tiger
taw	stove
tawkéss	gas stove
tawrǐit	iron (for clothing)
thǎŋ	pail
thiiwii	T.V.
thǐi	classifier for simple equipment
thǐi pèet krapǒŋ	an ordinary can opener
thǐi tii khàj	an ordinary (egg) beater
thonabàt	bank note

THAI BASIC COURSE

thoon	to give change (money)
thoorathát	T.V.
traa	brand, trademark (It is sometimes attached to the name of the product in advertising.)
wanlǎŋ	next time

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON THIRTY-NINE

39.0 BASIC DIALOG: Buying Fruit

khonsýy:	sôm níi khǎaj jaŋŋaj	How much are these oranges?
mêskháa:	lǎo la sǐp hâa bàat khà	Fifteen baht a kilo.
khonsýy:	kiloo nyŋ mii kii lûuk	How many oranges in a kilo?
mêskháa:	raaw hòk cèt lûuk	Around 6 or 7.
khonsýy:	lǎo la sǐp bàat dâj máj	How about 10 baht a kilo?
mêskháa:	mâj dâj khà	Impossible.
	nîi sôm jaŋŋdii nakhá	This is a very good kind of orange.
	rótdii wǎansanít	They have good, unusually sweet flavor.
khonsýy:	ŋán sǐp sǎoŋ bàat kǎlǎswkan na	Then make it 12 baht.
	aw kiloo nyŋ	I'll take one kilo.
	(mêskháa sòn sôm hâj)	(The saleslady hands over the oranges.)
mêskháa:	ca ráp araj ìik májkhá	Anything else?
khonsýy:	sàpparót níi lûuk thâwraj	How much are these pineapples each?
mêskháa:	sìi bàat khà	four baht.
khonsýy:	sǎam bàat dâj máj	Is three O.K.?

THAI BASIC COURSE

mêekháa:	mâj dâj khà	Can't do it.
	sii bàat khàat tua	Four baht, no bargaining
khonsýy:	aw lûuk nyn	I'll take one.
	chûaj lýak lûuk diidii hâj dūaj	Pick out a good one for me.
mêekháa:	nfi khà, thánmòt sìp hòk bàat thūan	Here it is. That makes 16 baht exactly altogether.
	(khonsýy sòn baj la róoj hâj mêekháa)	(The buyer hands the saleslady a 100 baht bill.)
mêekháa:	khun mií bėjjôj máj khá	You have any smaller bills?
	dichán mâj mií thoon	I don't have any change.
khonsýy:	mâj mií læej khráp	No, I don't have any at all.
mêekháa:	nán rōō sák pradīaw nakhá	Then please wait a minute.
	dichán ca paj lēsk maa hâj	I'll go get some change for you.

39.1 GRAMMAR NOTES

Types of Noun Phrases

a) Noun + Stative Verb(s)

With this type of construction the reference is non-specific; i.e. it refers to any one or more units of the whole class.

THAI BASIC COURSE

1. Noun + Stative Verb

rót màj 'new cars'

Here the reference is to a particular type of object as a class.

2. Noun + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Depending on the context, reduplication of the stative verb may result in

(a) 'Softening' the meaning of the stative verb,

phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phàan paj khan nyɯ

'I saw a whitish car pass by.'

(b) strengthening the meaning of the stative verb, or

rót khanníi mâj jàj phao. phǒm jàak dâj rót
jàj jàj

'This car is not big enough. I would like a really big car.'

(c) it may indicate that the noun it occurs with is plural.

kháw mii bâan sǔaj sǔaj 'He has beautiful houses.'

In all of these constructions the reference is to general rather than specific objects.

b) Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb(s)

Reference is usually to one object.

1. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb

Reference is one specific object.

nànsǔy lêm jàj 'the big book'

2. Noun + Classifier + Stative Verb Reduplicated

Reference is any one of a number of objects.

sapparòt lûuk dii dii 'any good pineapple'

THAI BASIC COURSE

In certain situations reduplication can result in

(a) 'softening' the meaning of the stative verb

chûaj lÿak lûuk jàj jàj hâj lûuk nÿn

'Please choose a rather large one for me.'

39.2 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (See Fruit Chart.)

1. sôm sǎam	{	lûuk baj phǒn	3 oranges
2. sôm oo nÿn	{	lûuk baj phǒn	1 pomelo
3. klûaj nÿn wǐi	{	baj lûuk phǒn	1 bunch of bananas
<u>or</u> sǐi	{	baj lûuk phǒn	or 4 bananas
4. mamûaŋ sǒŋ	{	lûuk phǒn baj	2 mangoes
5. maŋkhút nÿn	{	lûuk phǒn baj	1 mangosteen
6. chomphûu sǒŋ	{	lûuk phǒn baj	2 rose apples

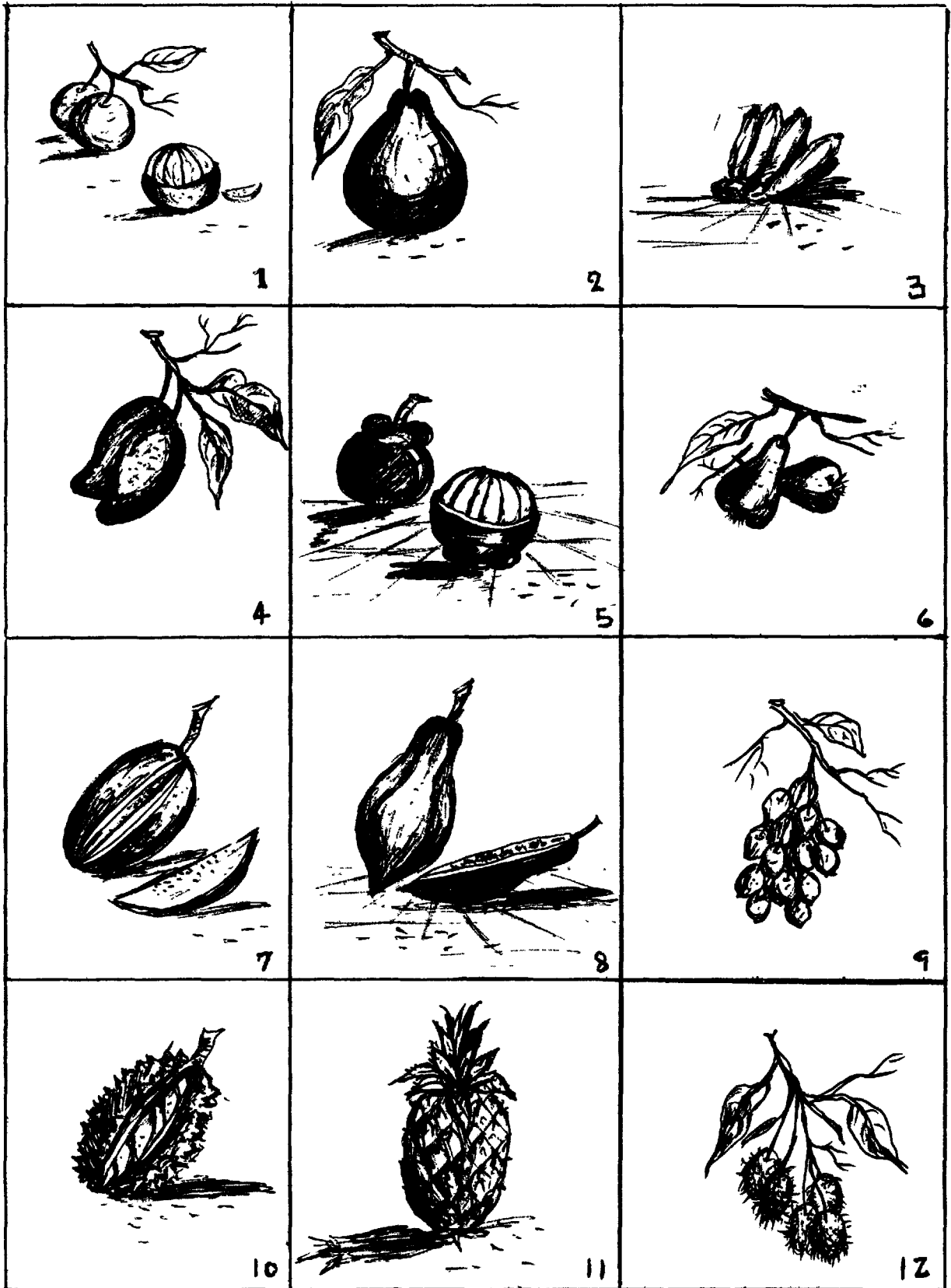
THAI BASIC COURSE

7. tɛɛŋmoo nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 watermelon
8. malakoo nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 papaya
9. laaŋsàat nỳn or	chôo	1 bunch of langsa or
sìpsìi	{ lûuk phỏn baj	14 langsa
10. thúrìan nỳn	{ lûuk phỏn baj	1 durian
11. sàparót nỳn	{ phỏn lûuk baj	1 pineapple
12. ợó nỳn <u>or</u> hâa	{ chôo phuan phỏn baj lûuk	1 bunch of rambuttans 5 rambuttans

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) <u>Sentence Construction Drill</u> (See Fruit Chart.)	
<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. sôm, jaŋŋaj	sôm nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these oranges? (by weight or quantity)
2. sôm oo, lûuk	sôm oo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are these grapefruit apiece?
3. klûaj, jaŋŋaj	klûaj nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these bananas?
4. mamûaŋ, lûuk	mamûaŋ nîi lûuk la thawràj How much are these mangoes apiece?
5. maŋkhút, jaŋŋaj	maŋkhút nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these mangosteens?
6. chomphûu, jaŋŋaj	chomphûu nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell these rose apples?
7. tseeŋmoo, lûuk	tseeŋmoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are watermelons each?
8. malakoo, lûuk	malakoo nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are papayas apiece?
9. laaŋsàat, jaŋŋaj	laaŋsàat nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell langsa?
10. thúrian, jaŋŋaj	thúrian nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell durians?
11. sàparót, lûuk	sàparót nîi lûuk la thâwràj How much are pineapples apiece?
12. ɲó, jaŋŋaj	ɲó nîi khǎaj jaŋŋaj How do you sell rambuttans?

THAI BASIC COURSE



THAI FRUIT

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>dii dii</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a good one for me.
1. ñaam ñaam pretty	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>ñaam ñaam</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a pretty one for me.
2. wǎan wǎan sweet	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>wǎan wǎan</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a very sweet one for me.
3. jàj jàj big	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a rather big one for me.
4. sùk sùk ripe	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>sùk sùk</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a really ripe one for me.
5. sòt sòt fresh	chûaj lÿak lûuk <u>sòt sòt</u> hâj dûaj Please choose a really fresh one for me.

d) Expansion Drill

1. sàparót lûuk dii dii sàparót lûuk dii dii wǎan wǎan	A good pineapple A good and sweet pineapple
2. sàparót lûuk too too sàparót lûuk too too wǎan wǎan	A big pineapple A big and sweet pineapple
3. thúrian lûuk too too thúrian lûuk too too rót dii dii	A big durian A big, good-tasting durian

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam
mǎnkhút lûuk ñaamñaam
rót dii dii</p> | <p>A pretty mangosteen
A pretty, good-tasting
mangosteen</p> |
| <p>5. mamuân lûuk too too
mamûan lûuk too too
sùk sùk</p> | <p>A big mango
A big, ripe mango</p> |
| <p>6. mamuân lûuk too too
mamûan lûuk too too
sòt sòt</p> | <p>A big mango
A big, fresh mango</p> |

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

- | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Pattern</u> |
|--------------------------|--|
| | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sàparòt</u> lûuk dii
dii hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pineapple
for me.</p> |
| 1. sôm oo | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>sôm oo</u> lûuk dii dii
hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good pomelo for
me.</p> |
| 2. mamuân, jàj, sǎam | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>mamuân</u> lûuk baj <u>jàj</u>
<u>jàj</u> hâj <u>sǎam</u> baj</p> <p>Please choose three (rather)
big mangoes for me.</p> |
| 3. thúrian, rót dii, nÿn | <p>chûaj lÿak <u>thúrian</u> <u>rót dii dii</u>
hâj lûuk nÿn</p> <p>Please choose a good durian for
me.</p> |
| 4. jàj,
sǒn | <p>chûaj lÿak thúrian baj <u>jàj</u> <u>jàj</u>
rót dii dii hâj sǒn lûuk</p> <p>Please choose two big and good
durians for me.</p> |

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. tɛɛŋmoo,
wǎan, nỳŋ chûaj lỳak tɛɛŋmoo lûuk jàj
jàj wǎan wǎan hâj lûuk nỳŋ
Please choose a big sweet
watermelon for me.

6. maŋkhút, ɲaam, nỳŋ kiloo chûaj maŋkhút lûuk ɲaam ɲaam
hâj kiloo nỳŋ
Please choose a kilo of pretty
mangoes for me.

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	chûaj lỳak <u>sàparót</u> lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nỳŋ Please choose a good pineapple for me.
1. sôm oo pomelo	chûaj lỳak <u>sôm oo</u> lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nỳŋ Please choose a good pomelo for me.
2. thúrian durian	chûaj lỳak <u>thúrian</u> lûuk dii dii hâj lûuk nỳŋ Please choose a good durian for me.
3. sǎam three	chûaj lỳak thúrian lûuk dii dii hâj <u>sǎam</u> lûuk Please choose three good durians for me.
4. jàj big	chûaj lỳak thúrian lûuk <u>jàj jàj</u> hâj sǎam lûuk Please choose three rather big durians for me.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| 5. | jàj, rôt dii

big, of good flavor | chûaj lỳak thúrìan lûuk <u>jàj</u> <u>jàj</u>
<u>rôt dii</u> dii hâj sǎam lûuk

Please choose three rather big
delicious durians for me. |
| 6. | sýy

buy | chûaj <u>sýy</u> thúrìan lûuk jàj jàj
rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk

Please buy three rather big
delicious durians for me. |
| 7. | maṅkhút, ṅaam
mangosteens

pretty | chûaj sýy <u>maṅkhút</u> lûuk <u>ṅaam</u> <u>ṅaam</u>
rôt dii dii hâj sǎam lûuk

Please buy three pretty, good
tasting mangosteens for me. |
| 8. | nyṅ kiloo

one kilo | chûaj sýy maṅkhút lûuk ṅaam ṅaam
rôt dii dii hâj <u>kiloo</u> <u>nyṅ</u>

Please buy a kilo of pretty,
delicious mangosteens for me. |
| 9. | síp bàat

ten baht | chûaj sýy maṅkhút lûuk ṅaam ṅaam
rôt dii dii hâj <u>síp</u> <u>bàat</u>

Please buy ten baht worth of
pretty, delicious mangosteens
for me. |
| 10. | mamuân, too
wǎan
mango, large, sweet | chûaj sýy <u>mamuân</u> lûuk <u>too</u> <u>too</u>
<u>wǎan</u> <u>wǎan</u> hâj síp bàat

Please buy ten baht of sweet,
big mangoes for me. |
| 11. | malakoo, sùk, too

papaya, ripe, big | chûaj sýy <u>malakoo</u> lûuk too too
<u>sùk</u> <u>sùk</u> hâj síp bàat

Please buy ten baht of big, ripe
papayas for me. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern 2</u>
1. khun mâj mi i bĕnjĕj rĕkhráp You don't have any change?	lĕek to change	khun mâj mi i bĕnjĕj rĕkhráp phĕm capaj <u>lĕek</u> maa hâj You don't have any change? I'll go get some change for you.
2. khun ca thaan kaafĕ rĕkhráp You'd like a cup of coffee?	sýy to buy	khun ca thaan kaafĕ rĕkhráp phĕm ca paj <u>sýy</u> maa hâj You'd like a cup of coffee? I'll go and buy some for you.
3. khun mâj mi i nánsýy rĕkhráp You don't have a book?	aw to get	khun mâj mi i nánsýy rĕkhráp phĕm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa hâj You don't have a book? I'll go get one for you.
4. khun tĕnkaan thĕksĭi rĕkhráp Do you want a taxi?	rĭak call	khun tĕnkaan thĕksĭi rĕkhráp phĕm ca paj <u>rĭak</u> maa hâj Do you want a taxi? I'll go and call one for you.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>5. khun tŏnkaan mŏo rĕkhráp
rĕkhráp
Do you want a doctor?</p> | <p>taam
to send
for, to
get (a
person)</p> | <p>khun tŏnkaan mŏo rĕkhráp
phŏm ca paj <u>taam</u> maa háj
Do you want a doctor?
I'll go get one for
you.</p> |
| <p>6. khun ca nĕn máj
Would you like to
sit down?</p> | <p>aw kĕwĕi
get a
chair</p> | <p>khun ca nĕn máj
phŏm ca paj <u>aw kĕwĕi</u>
maa háj
Would you like to
sit down?
I'll bring a chair
for you.</p> |
| <p>7. khun ca thaán máj
Would you like to eat?</p> | <p>aw
get</p> | <p>khun ca thaán máj
phŏm ca paj <u>aw</u> maa háj
Would you like to eat?
I'll bring something
for you.</p> |
| <p>8. khun ca lĕek nĕn máj
Would you like to change
money?</p> | <p>lĕek
change</p> | <p>khun ca lĕek nĕn máj
phŏm ca paj <u>lĕek</u> maa
háj
Would you like to
change money?
I'll go and change some
for you.</p> |

h) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phŏm máj mĭi bĕnjŏj. phŏm ca tŏn paj lĕek nĕn
I don't have small bank notes. I'll have to go change
some money.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. khun mi**i** b**é**n**j**ô**j** má**j**. kh**ǒ** l**ê**sk sák r**ó**o**j** bàat.
Do you have any change? Please change a hundred Baht.
3. khun mi**i** s**è**et s**at**à**ə**n má**j**. kh**ǒ** l**ê**sk sák h**â**a bàat
Do you have any change? Could I have change for five Baht?
4. ch**û**aj paj l**ê**sk n**ə**n m**aa** h**â**j sák j**î**is**ì**p bàat
Please go and get twenty Baht change for me.
5. ph**ǒ**m mi**i** n**ə**n d**oo**l**â**a j**ù** j**î**is**ì**p r**î**an. c**a** l**ê**sk p**ə**n n**ə**n**th**aj d**â**j th**â**wr**à**j
I have twenty dollars. How much Thai money will I get in exchange for it?
6. khun s**â**ap má**j** kh**r**áp w**â**a th**ě**w**n**í**i** mi**i** th**î**l**ê**sk**n**ə**n** má**j**.
Do you know if there are any money changers around here?
7. ch**aa**w**na**a aw kh**â**aw paj l**ê**sk m**aa** p**ə**n kh**ǒ**n**ch**á**j**
The farmers took the rice and traded it for things.
8. j**à**a aw ph**im**s**ě**en paj l**ê**sk k**à**p k**ly**a.
Don't trade (exchange) smelling salts for salt.
(Do not trade valuable things for worthless things.
A Thai proverb)

1) Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. l ê sk | exchange |
| l ê sk k à p | exchange with |
| l ê sk ka kh ǒ o n | exchange with things |
| l ê sk n ə n ka kh ǒ o n | exchange money for things |

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. lĕk exchange
lĕk nĕn exchange money
lĕk nĕn sĭp rĭan (I) want to exchange ten dollars.
3. lĕk exchange
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj Please change for small bank notes.
khŏo lĕk bĕnjŏj sák Please give me 100 Baht change.
róoj bàat
4. lĕk exchange
khŏo lĕk Please exchange.
khŏo lĕk sĕetsatàan Please exchange for coins.
khŏo lĕk sĕetsatàan sák Please exchange five Baht into
hâa bàat coins?
5. lĕk exchange
lĕk kan trade
lĕk rŏt kan trade cars
lĕk rŏt kan, aw máj How would you like to trade cars?
6. lĕk exchange
aw khâaw paj lĕk Take rice and exchange it.
aw khâaw paj lĕk ka Take rice and exchange it for
khŏoncháj things.
chaawnaa aw khâaw paj The farmers trade rice for
lĕk ka khŏoncháj things.

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. lĕsk exchange
aw paj lĕsk Take it and exchange it.
aw paj lĕsk maa been to exchange something
aw khĕaw paj lĕsk maa has been to exchange rice for
pen khŏŏcháj useful things
8. lĕsk exchange
aw paj lĕsk Take it and exchange it.
aw rŏt kĕw paj lĕsk Take the old car to exchange it.
aw rŏt kĕw paj lĕsk maa have been to trade the old car
pen rŏt mĕj in for a new one

Exercise (on lĕsk)

1. chaawnaa mi tĕ khĕaw. thĕa khĕw tŏŏkaan khŏŏcháj tĕ
khĕw mĕj mi nĕn sŏy. khĕw ca tham janŏaj
A farmer has only rice. If he wants other things but he
doesn't have money to buy them, what can he do?
2. khun ca tŏŏ hĕj nĕn khĕa thĕksĕi sĭphĕa bĕat. khun mi tĕ
baj la rŏŏj. thĕksĕi mĕj mi thŏn. khun ca tham janŏaj
You have to pay fifteen Baht for taxi fare. You have only
a 100 Baht bank note. The driver doesn't have any change.
What do you do?
3. khun mi tĕ nĕn đŏn lĕa. khun tŏŏkaan nĕn bĕat, khun ca
tham janŏaj
You have only dollars. You want some baht. What do you do?
4. thĕa nĕn đŏn lĕa thĕwkĕp jĭisĭp bĕat. thĕa khun mi nĕn
hĕasĭp đŏn lĕa, khun ca lĕsk nĕn bĕat đĕj thĕwrĕj
If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht; if you have
fifty dollars, how many baht do you get?

THAI BASIC COURSE

5. khun phíchaj ca paj ameerikaa. kháw aw nən paj lêsk thîi thanakhaan hâa phan bàat. thâa nỳn đoon lâa thâw kàp jîisíp bàat. khun phíchaj đâj nən đoon lâa thâwràj

Mr. Pichai is going to America. He went to the bank to exchange money for 5,000 baht. If one dollar is equivalent to twenty baht, how many dollars does Mr. Pichai get?

j) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. phǒm sýy khǒn raakhaa síp pèet bàat. phǒm hâj nən kháw paj jîisíp bàat. kháw thoon nən hâj phǒm sǒn bàat.

I made a purchase for 18 baht. I gave him twenty baht. He gave me two baht change.

2. khâa thêksîi síp sǒn bàat. phǒm hâj nən thêksîi paj síp hâa bàat kháw thoon maa hâj phǒm sǒn bàat. kháw thoon nən hâj phǒm khàat paj nỳn bàat.

The taxi fare is 12 baht. I gave the driver 15 baht. He gave me two baht change. He shortchanged me one baht.

3. phǒm mii tès baj la rǒoj, mâj mîi bènjôj. mēskhâa mâj mii nən thoon, phǒm lǎej tǒn paj lêsk bènjôj maa hâj kháw

I had only one hundred baht bank notes. I didn't have any smaller bank notes. The vendor didn't have any change. So, I had to go get some change for her.

4. khun khuan ca đâj nenthoon sǒn bàat tès kháw thoon hâj khun sǒn bàat hâasíp. kháw thoon nən hâj khun kəen maa hâasíp sataan

You should have got two baht change but he gave you the change for two baht and fifty satang. He gave you fifty satang too much in change.

5. khǒn raakhaa thánmòt pèetsíp sîi bàat. phǒm hâj nən kháw paj rǒoj nỳn. phǒm khuan ca đâj nenthoon thâwràj

The goods cost altogether 84 baht. I gave him 100 baht. How much change should I get?

THAI BASIC COURSE

k) Expansion Drill

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. thoon | To give change |
| thoonnen | To give change |
| thoon nen hâj khun | To give you change |
| thoon nen hâj khun
săam baaat | To give you 3 baht change |
| khaw thoон nen hâj
khun sãam baaat | He gave you 3 baht change. |
| 2. thoон | To give change |
| thoon maa | To give change (to me) |
| thoon maa hâj phom | To give me change |
| thoon maa hâj phom
sãam baaat | To give me 3 baht change |
| tôn thoон maa hâj
phom sãam baaat | Should give me 3 |
| khun tôn thoон maa hâj
phom sãam baaat, thuuuk
maj khráp | You should have given me 3 baht
change, right? |
| 3. khaat | To be lacking |
| khaat paj | To be lacking |
| khaat paj sớon baaat | Two baht too little |
| nen khaat paj sớon
baat | Two baht too little change |
| thoon nen maa khaat
paj sớon baaat | Gave 2 baht too little in change |
| thoon nen maa hâj
phom khaat paj sớon
baat | Gave me 2 baht too little in
change. |
| khun thoон nen maa
hâj phom khaat paj
sớon baaat | You shortchanged me 2 baht. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khun sýy phâamăj thánmòt săamróoj síp bàat.
khun hâj baj la róoj khonkhăaj sîi baj.
khonkhăaj thoon nən maa hâj khun pèst síp bàat. kháw thoon
nən hâj khun khàat paj thâwràj.

You bought 310 baht worth of Thai silk. You gave the salesman four 100 baht bank notes. The salesman gave you 80 baht change. How much did he shortchange you?

5. khun sýy khǒon raakhaa săam bàat khun hâj baj la hâa khonkhăaj paj. kháw thoon maa hâj khun săam bàat. kháw thoon nən kəen maa thâwràj.

You bought some things for 3 baht. You gave the salesman one 5 baht bank note. He gave you 3 baht change. How much extra change did you get?

1) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	ca <u>ráp araj</u> ìik máj Would you like anything else?
1. sýy araj	ca <u>sýy araj</u> ìik máj Would you like to buy anything else?
2. tham araj	ca <u>tham araj</u> ìik máj Would you like to do anything else?
3. paj năj	ca <u>paj năj</u> ìik máj Would you like to go anywhere else?
4. paj hăa khraj	ca <u>paj hăa khraj</u> ìik máj Would you like to see anyone else?

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. kháw dâj khoncháj dii
He has (got) good servants.
4. kháw mií lûuksăaw sŭaj jùu khonnŷ
He has a beautiful daughter.
5. thŷinân mií ráanaahăan dii jùu ráan nŷ
There is a good restaurant there.
6. thŷinân mií ráankhăajkhŏŋ jàj jùu ráan nŷ
There is a big store there.

o) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'plurality')

1. kháw mií bân sŭaj suăj lăaj lăŋ
He has many beautiful houses.
2. kháw mií rót ameerikan jàj jàj lăaj khan
He has many big American cars.
3. kháw mií lûuknŏŋ kèn kèn dii dii lăaj khon
He has many good and competent employees.
4. kháw mií khŏŋcháj dii dii lăaj jàaŋ.
He has many nice things to use.
5. kháw rúucàk ráanaahăan dii dii thùuk thùuk lăaj hèn
He knows many inexpensive good restaurants.

THAI BASIC COURSE

6. thîinân miî roonriian màj màj dii dii juu lăaj roon

There are many good new schools there.

7. thîinân miî khǒon dii dii thùuk thùuk hâj lŷak lăaj jàan

There are many kinds of good, inexpensive things to choose from there.

p) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication indicates 'generality')

1. phǒm jàak dâj nânsŷy dii dii sák lêm

I want to get a good book.

2. kháw tǒnkaan phŷan dii dii sák khon

He needs a good friend.

3. phǒm ca sŷy rót ameerikan khan jàj jàj sák khan

I'll buy a big American car.

4. chŷaj sŷy phâamăj sŷaj sŷaj dii dii sŷi dam hâj sák sǒon lăa

Please buy two yards of good beautiful Thai silk, in black for me.

5. phǒm jàak dâj lŷuknǒon dii dii kènken sák khonnyn

I would like to get a competent good person to work for me.

q) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication strengthening of the base meanings)

1. rótkhanníi mâj jàj phoo. phǒm jàak dâj rót jàj jàj

This car is not big enough. I would like a big car.

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. bân lằnńí jàj kəen paj. phǒm jàak dâj bân lék lék.
This house is too big. I would like a small house.
3. nán̄sǔy lêmńí jàak paj nòoj. phǒm jàak dâj nán̄sǔy n̄âaj n̄âaj
This book is a little bit too difficult. I would like an easy one.
4. phâa jàanńí phseŋ paj. phǒm jǎak dâj jàan thùuk thùuk
This kind of material is too expensive. I would like a cheap kind.
5. kaafɛɛ thûaj ní māj rón léej. phǒm jàak dâj kaafɛɛ rónrón
This cup of coffee is not hot. I'd like hot coffee.

r) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

(Reduplication softening the base meaning)

1. phǒm jàak dâj rót dii dii sák khan nyŋ
I would like to get a fairly good car.
2. chûaj sýy mamûan lûuk tootoo hâj sǐp bàat
Please buy me 50 Baht of rather big mangoes.
3. phûujǐŋ khonnán pen khon dam dam tɛɛ māj dam mâak
That lady is a rather dark person but not very dark.
4. phǒm hěn rót sǐi khǎaw khǎaw phaan paj khannŋ
I saw a whitish car pass by.
5. phǒm cam dâj wâa nán̄sǔy lêmńán
pen nán̄sǔy lêm lék lék baan baan.
I remember that that book is a rather small thin book.

THAI BASIC COURSE

s) Recognition and Familiarization Drill (classifier specifies the object)

1. khun chôp rót khan nǎj. khan lék rý khan jàj

Which car do you like? The small one or the big one?

2. kháw ca chǎw lǎn nǎj. lǎn sǐkhǎaw rý sǐkhǎaw

Which house is he going to rent? The green one or the white one?

3. nǎnsǎy khǒn khun lêm nǎj, lêm kàw rý lêm màj

Which book is yours? The old one or the new one?

4. khun ca aw pàakkaa an thùuk rý an phɛɛn

Does he want the cheap pen or the expensive one?

5. fɛɛn khǒn kháw khon nǎj (phûujǎn) khon sǎaj rý khon màj sǎaj

Which one is his girl friend? The pretty one or the not (so) pretty one?

t) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

Single Adjective
(Indicating kind
or type)

Reduplicated Adjective
(Indicating quality)

1. mamûan sùk

mamûan sùksùk

Ripe mangoes

Mangoes which are (rather) ripe

2. kaafɛɛ rón

kaafɛɛ rónrón

Hot coffee

The coffee which is quite hot

3. nám jen

nám jenjen

Cold water

Water which is really cold

THAI BASIC COURSE

4. khǒŋkàw	khǒŋ kàwkàw
Antiques	Old things
5. khǒŋwǎan	khǒŋ wǎanwǎan
Dessert	Sweet things

39.3 EXERCISES

- 1) Pretend you are shopping for fruit and ask for
 - (a) 2 oranges and a bunch of bananas,
 - (b) six mangosteens and one small watermelon,
 - (c) 3 ripe mangoes,
 - (d) 1 large papaya,
 - (e) one small durian,
 - (f) a sweet pineapple,
 - (g) a bunch of rambuttans.

- 2) Pretend you are shopping and say to the salesperson
" Please choose for me _____ "
 - (a) a good orange,
 - (b) 3 sweet pineapples,
 - (c) one large durian,
 - (d) a big, sweet watermelon,
 - (e) 2 kilos of beautiful mangosteens,
 - (f) 3 baht worth of big ripe papayas,
 - (g) 1 bunch of ripe bananas,
 - (h) 3 rose apples,
 - (i) 2 bunches of good rambuttans,
 - (j) 1 bunch of langsa.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- 3) Student A says to Student B, "Where are you going?"
Student B replies, "I'm going to buy _____ for you."
Use different kinds of objects in your reply.
- 4) Student A: "I have _____ dollars. How much Thai
money will I get in exchange for it?"
Student B: "You'll get _____ baht."

39.4 VOCABULARY

baj la hâa	5 baht bank note
bénjôj	small bill (change)
chomphûu	rose apple
chôo	bunch, classifier of fruit in a bunch
doolâa	dollar
fœn	girl or boy friend
hók cèt	6 or 7
kœn	too much
khàat	shortage of, short (of)
khàat tua	no bargaining
khǒncháj	things for use
klûaj	banana
laansàat	bangsa (small fruit)
lûuk	classifier for fruit
lÿak	to choose, pick out, select, elect

THAI BASIC COURSE

malakoo	papaya (fruit)
mamûaŋ	mango (fruit)
maŋkhút	mangosteen (fruit)
mêskháa	salesperson (female)
ŋənthoon	change
ŋó	rambuttan (fruit)
phíchaŋ	Phichai (male first name)
phimsěen	smelling salts
phǒn	classifier for fruit
phǒnlamáaŋ	fruit
phuaŋ	bunch, classifier for fruit in a bunch
ráp	to take on, to eat (something)
rĭan	coin, dollars
rót	flavor
sák	a little, a bit
sák pradĭaw	a minute
sanĭt	extremely (sweet, etc.); close, intimate (of friends, etc.)
săpparót	pineapple
sèet satàaŋ	change (in coin)
sôm	orange
sôm oo	pomelo
sòt	fresh (of fruit, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

sùk	ripe
tɛɛŋmoo	watermelon
tháŋmòt	altogether
thíilêskɛn	place to exchange money
thûan	even, in round numbers
thúrian	durian (fruit)
wǎan	sweet (in flavor)
wǐi	bunch, classifier for bunch of bananas

THAI BASIC COURSE

LESSON FORTY

40.0 BASIC DIALOG: Banking and Shopping Trip

- A: khun mi bẻnj๓j bẻan m๓j Do you have any change?
- B: mi, tẻe m๓j thẻn r๓๓j Yes, but not as much as 100
b๓at Baht.
- A: n๓n, kh๓๓ jyy m k๓๓n s๓k Well, could I borrow 20 Baht,
j๓is๓p b๓at, d๓j m๓j then?
- kh๓๓pkhun m๓ak Thank you.
- B: wann๓i ca paj n๓j rẻkhr๓p You are going somewhere today?
- A: ca paj thanakhaan To the bank.
- B: paj f๓ak n๓n rẻkhr๓p To deposit money?
- A: pl๓aw, ca paj bẻek n๓n No, to get some money out.
- k๓p ca phaa phy๓n far๓n And I am also taking a 'farang'
paj lẻek n๓nthaj d๓aj friend to change some money,
- phr๓ ca paj syy kh๓๓n kan Because we are going shopping.
- phy๓n kh๓w j๓ak syy ph๓am๓j She wants some Thai silk, a
thaj, kh๓nn๓n silver bowl,
- lẻẻkwk๓ chamsal๓t th๓i tham And a wooden salad bowl.
d๓aj m๓aj

40.1 BASIC DIALOG: (Part 2)

- A: khun r๓uc๓k r๓andiidi th๓i You know any good and inexpen-
m๓j phẻn n๓k bẻan m๓j sive shops?
- B: r๓๓n s๓nkh๓athaj n๓j khr๓p Yes, the "Thai merchandise"
 shop.
- kh๓w mi kh๓๓nthaj diidi They have a large selection of
s๓ajs๓aj h๓j ly๓k jẻ beautiful and good things.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>fĩimyy kháw dii mâak phró
kháw mií chãan diidii</p> | <p>Their work is very good
because they have good artisans.</p> |
| <p>A: ciŋná, phêŋ nýk òok</p> | <p>That's true, it just occurred
to me.</p> |
| <p>B: əə, khun ca phàan ráan
nanaaphân máj</p> | <p>By the way, are you going to
go by "Nana Phan" shop?</p> |
| <p>A: phàan, ca fàak sýy araj
bãan</p> | <p>Yes, could I get you something?</p> |
| <p>B: chũaj sýy thàanfajchǎaj
hǎj dũaj</p> | <p>Could you buy some flashlight
batteries for me?</p> |
| <p>A: aw kǐi kōon</p> | <p>How many do you want?</p> |
| <p>B: sōon kōon, lésawkō
lòotfajfáa hòksíp
rēsŋthian sǎam lòot</p> | <p>Two, and three sixty-watt light
bulbs.</p> |
| <p>nĩkhráp nēnkhâakhōon</p> | <p>Here's the money.</p> |
| <p>A: jǎn mǎj tōon hǎj rōkhráp

phró jǎn mǎj sǎap wǎa
thǎwrǎj</p> | <p>Don't bother about it yet,

because I don't know how much
it's going to be.</p> |

40.2 VOCABULARY NOTES

- a) bèek nēn means 'to get money (from the bank)' either
by (a) taking money out of an account: thōon nēn or
(b) by cashing a check: aw chék paj khýn nēn
- b) thýn is used to indicate that a certain point, degree,
or amount has been reached.
When used as a main verb, it means 'to reach, get to' or
'to be as much as (with amounts)'.
mii bēnjōj tēs mǎj thýn rōoj bàat
I have change but not as much as 100 baht.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- c) jé, jé, jéjé means 'to be a great deal, a lot, plenty.' It frequently replaces mâak in colloquial speech in the sense of 'large number or quantity', but not in the sense of 'very'.
- kháw mii khǒŋ diidi jé 'He has lots of good things.'
- d) fǐi myy means (a) 'craftmanship' as in tó tua nii fǐimyy dii
- 'This table is well made (good craftsmanship)' and (b) 'manual skill' châaŋ fǐi myy dii 'a skilled craftsman'. Note that kháw fǐimyy dii and fǐimyy kháw dii mean the same thing. (See 37.2b)
- e) kòon in the sentence khǒo jyyim kòon is used to emphasize the fact that the loan is to be of very short duration. (The speaker is emphasizing that he really doesn't need a loan, but there seems to be no other solution, since the other person doesn't have change for his bank note.)
- f) sák (sàk) means 'merely, just, as little as'. It normally precedes a number or a quantitative expression and implies that the speaker considers the number or amount referred to as not very large.

Borrower: khǒo jyyim nən sák rǒoj bàat

'Could I borrow 100 baht?' (I'm sure you will let me have it, since it's such a small amount.)

tâŋ means 'as much as, as many as'. It is used in the same types of constructions as sák but it implies that the speaker considers the amount referred to as quite large, hence the prospective lender might respond to the above request with

tâŋ rǒoj bàat chiao rǎ 'a hundred baht!'

(That's a lot of money!)

- (g) In sentences like chûaj sýy thaan fajchaaŋ hâj dūaj, dūaj has the meaning 'since you are going to be doing something anyway, it won't be too much trouble for you to do me a favor too, would it?'

THAI BASIC COURSE

h) ɲaj is used when pointing to something that has been sought.

A: khun coon khon nǎj 'Which one's John?'

B: khon nán ɲaj (lá) 'That one. (pointing at him).'

40.3 GRAMMAR NOTES

a) châaŋ means a person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds like the following:

châaŋ tàt phǒm 'barber': châaŋ + tàt phǒm 'to cut hair'

châaŋ tàt sýa 'tailor': châaŋ + tàt sýa 'to cut (out) clothing'

châaŋ thoon 'jeweler': châaŋ + thoon 'gold'

châaŋ thàaj rûup 'photographer': châaŋ + thàaj rûup 'take pictures'

châaŋ máaj 'carpenter': châaŋ + máaj 'wood'

châaŋ thǒm 'nielloware maker': châaŋ + thǒm 'make nielloware'

châaŋ kèsalàk 'carver': châaŋ + kèsalàk 'to carve'

b) Completive verbs¹ in Thai are somewhat similar to certain types of adverbs in English that occur with verbs and form constructions having a completely different meaning, such as figure out, bring up, etc., except that in Thai the completive verb usually indicates that the action referred to in the main verb was brought to conclusion, thus khít 'to think' and khít òok 'to figure out'. If the result of the action is unsuccessful, the negative is placed before the completive, not the main verb:

khít mâj òok 'didn't succeed in figuring it out'

jâak mâak. phǒm khít mâj òok 'It's very difficult.

I can't figure it out.

phǒm nyk mâj òok wâa kháw jùu thfinǎj

'I can't recall where he lives.'

¹Noss, page 125 ff.

THAI BASIC COURSE

c) In English use of the personal pronoun immediately after its noun antecedent, such as Mary she, or my friend he, etc. is considered substandard English. This is not the case in Thai. Examples of this type (in the third person) are very common. The choice of pronoun is dependent on the degree of intimacy and the relative status levels of the speaker and the person referred to.

(a) phŷan kháw '(my) friend he'
not intimate, about equal status

(b) lŷuk phŷm kɛɛ¹ 'my children they'
intimate, equal status

(c) khun prapâat thân 'Mr. Prapas he'
Least intimate, superior status (rank or age)
to speaker

d) Borrow and lend are related in Thai in much the same way as in English. Observe the examples below:

Subject	<u>khŷo</u>	<u>jyym</u>	Object	Lender	(Amount)
khun A	khŷo	jyym	ŋen	khun B	10 bàat
Mr. A	asks to	borrow	money	from Mr. B	10 baht
'Mr. A asks Mr. B for the loan of 10 baht.'					

Compare the above with this:

Subject	<u>hâj</u>	Object	Recipient	<u>jyym</u>	(Amount)
khun A	hâj	ŋen	khun B	jyym	5 bàat
Mr. A	gave	money	(to) Mr. B	to borrow	5 baht
'Mr. A lent Mr. B five baht.'					

¹Noss, page 100 ff.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- e) fàak is used to indicate that you are entrusting some task to another person or something to an institution.

(NP)	<u>fàak</u>	(NP)	Verb Phrase
(phǒm)	fàak	(khun)	sýy jaa dŭaj
(I)	entrust	(you)	to buy medicine (for me) too
'Could you buy some medicine (for me) too.'			

In sentences like the following:

phǒm ca sýy sýa sŭaj sŭaj paj fàak phanrajaa phǒm

'I'll buy pretty dresses to give to my wife',

fàak means only 'to give to'.

- f) The following construction is used to indicate what material an object is made of:

NP	tham	dŭaj	Material
tó tuaníi	tham	dŭaj	máaj
'This table is made of wood.'			

Other materials such as nen 'silver', máaj sàk 'teak', lèk 'iron', kradaat 'paper', or kracók 'glass'.

The construction above is also used in a limited number of cases to indicate the instrument that was used in making something, as in this example:

krapăw bajnán tham dŭaj myy 'That bag is hand-made.'

In place of myy, khryaŋ(càk) 'machine' could be used.

THAI BASIC COURSE

40.4 GRAMMAR DRILLS

a) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. kháw, nən, róoj bàat He, money, 100 Baht	<u>kháw mii nən thǎy rój bàat máj</u> Does he have as much as 100 Baht?
2. khun, bənjǎj sìp bàat you, change, ten Baht	<u>khun mii bənjǎj thǎy sìp bàat máj</u> Do you have as much as 10 Baht change?
3. kháw, nən fàak, thanakhaan, láan bàat he, money in the bank, one million baht	<u>kháw mii nən fàak thanakhaan thǎy</u> <u>láan bàat máj</u> Does he have as much as one million Baht in the bank?
4. roonrian níi, nákrían, róoj khon. This school, students, 100.	<u>roonrian níi mii nákrían thǎy</u> <u>róoj khon máj</u> Are there as many as 100 students in this school?
5. hōnsamùt níi, nánsǎy, hāa róoj. This library, books, 500.	<u>hōnsamùt níi mii nánsǎy thǎy</u> <u>hāa róoj lēm máj</u> Are there as many as 500 books in this library?
6. khun, weelaa, khrǎy chūamoon. You, time, half an hour.	<u>khun mii weelaa thǎy khrǎy</u> <u>chūamoon máj</u> Do you have as much as half an hour?

THAI BASIC COURSE

b) Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	phǒm mii <u>bénjôj</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht in change.
1. nèn, róoj bàat Money, one hundred Baht.	phǒm mii <u>nèn</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>bàat</u> . I don't have as much as 100 Baht.
2. nèn fàak thanakhaan, nỳn phan bàat. Money in the bank, 1000 baht.	phǒm mii <u>nèn fàak thanakhaan</u> <u>mâj thǎy nỳn phan bàat</u> . I don't have as much as one thousand Baht in the bank.
3. nákrian, róoj khon. Students, 100.	phǒm mii <u>nákrian</u> mâj thǎy <u>róoj</u> <u>khon</u> . I don't have as many as 100 students.
4. khon chûaj, síp khon. helpers, ten.	phǒm mii <u>khon chûaj</u> mâj thǎy <u>síp</u> <u>khon</u> . I don't have as many as 10 helpers.
5. weelaa lýa, nỳn dyan. time left, one month	phǒm mii <u>weelaa lýa</u> mâj thǎy <u>nỳn</u> <u>dyan</u> . I have less than a month left.

c) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. kháw sǎa khâa châw bâan dyan la mâj thǎy sǎam phan bàat.
He pays for the rent less than three thousand Baht a month.
2. kháw mii nèn fàak thanakhaan mâj thǎy láan bàat.
He doesn't have as much as one million Baht in the bank.

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. kháw mi1 weelaa lýa ìik mâj thÿn dyan.
He has only less than a month left.
4. phóm thamnaan thîinîi (maa) dâj mâj thÿn pi1.
I have worked here less than a year.
5. kháw phên sÿy rót khan níi dâj mâj thÿn pi1.
He's just bought this car less than a year ago.

d) Substitutuion Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
	khǎo jÿym ñen sák <u>jîisìp</u> <u>bàat</u> dâj máj May I borrow twenty baht?
1. nánsÿyphim, pradĭaw.	khǎo jÿym <u>nánsÿyphim</u> sák <u>pradĭaw</u> May I borrow your newspaper for a few minutes?
2. rót, khrÿn chûamoon.	khǎo jÿym <u>rót</u> sák <u>khrÿn</u> <u>chûamoon</u> , dâj máj May I borrow your car for only half an hour?
3. pàakaa, nÿn, dâam.	khǎo jÿym <u>pàakaa</u> sák dâam, dâj máj May I borrow a pen?
4. nánsÿy lêm níi, sǎon wan.	khǎo jÿym <u>nánsÿy</u> <u>lêm</u> <u>níi</u> sák <u>sǎon</u> <u>wan</u> , câj máj May I borrow this book for two days?
5. nánsÿy dii dii, sǎon lêm.	khǎo jÿym <u>nánsÿy</u> <u>dii</u> <u>dii</u> sák <u>sǎon</u> <u>lêm</u> , dâj máj May I borrow two good books?

THAI BASIC COURSE

- e) Transformation Drill (Form a statement based on the exchange.)
- | <u>Pattern 1 and 2</u> | <u>Pattern 3</u> |
|---|--|
| <u>Example I:</u> | |
| A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp
bàat, dâj máj
May I borrow 10 baht? | khun B hâj nən khun A jyym sĭp
bàat
Mr. B lent Mr. A ten baht. |
| B: dâj
O.K. | |
| <u>Example II:</u> | |
| A: khǎo jyym nən sák sĭp
bàat, dâj máj
Could I borrow ten
baht from you? | khun A khǎo jyym nən khun B sĭp
bàat tĕe khun B mâj hâj jyym
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a ten baht
loan, but Mr. B won't lend it
to him. |
| B: mâj dâj
No | |
| 1. A: khǎo jyym pàakaa sák
dâam, dâj máj
Could I borrow a pen? | khun A khǎo jyym pàakaa khun
B tĕe khun B mâj hâj
Mr. A asks Mr. B for loan of
a pen, but Mr. B won't lend
it to him. |
| B: mâj dâj
No | |
| 2. A: khǎo jyym nânsÿyphim
chabàp níi nòoj,
dâjmáj
May I borrow this
newspaper? | khun B hâj khun A jyym
nânsÿyphim
Mr. B lent Mr. A a newspaper. |
| B: dâj
O.K. | |

THAI BASIC COURSE

3. A: khǎo jyym nánsǎy sák sǎoŋ lêm, dâj máj
may I borrow two
B: dâj
Yes.
- khun B hâj khun A khǎo jyym nánsǎy sǎoŋ lêm.
Mr. B lent Mr. A two books.
4. A: khǎo jyym pàakaa sák dâam, dâj máj.
May I borrow a pen?
B: mâj dâj
No.
- khun A khǎo jyym pàakaa khun B tēs khun B mâj hâj.
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a loan of a pen, but Mr. B won't lend one to him.
5. A: khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ phimdlit sák dǎaw, dâj máj
May I borrow your typewriter for a few minutes?
B: aw si khráp
You may take it.
- khun B hâj khun A khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ phimdlit
Mr. B lent Mr. A a typewriter.
6. A: khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ àt théep sák chûamooŋ, dâj máj
May I borrow the tape recorder for an hour?
B: khǎothôot dûaj, phǎm tǎoŋ cháj khráp
Sorry, I have to use it.
- khun A khǎo jyym khrÿaŋ àt théep khun B tēs khun B mâj hâj.
Mr. A asks Mr. B for a tape recorder, but Mr. B won't lend it to him.

THAI BASIC COURSE

f) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun coon kháw mâj jàak paj
John doesn't want to go.
2. lûuk phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̌ɔp khɔ̌ɔŋ wǎanwǎan
My children like sweet things.
3. naaj phǒm kháw mâj chɔ̌ɔp háj phǒm paj sǎaj
My boss doesn't like me to be late.
4. phanrajaa phǒm kɛɛ chɔ̌ɔp bǎan lǎŋ níi
My wife likes this house.
5. naajók thǎan mâj wǎan
The prime minister is busy.
6. dèk khon nán kɛɛ maa jùu thǎinǎi naan
That child has been here a long time.

g) Sentence Construction Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>
1. chaamsalàt bajníi, máaj This salad bowl, wood	chaamsalàt bajníi tham dūaj máaj. This salad bowl is made of wood.
2. khǎn bajníi, nɛn This bowl, silver	khǎn bajníi tham dūaj nɛn. This bowl is made of silver.
3. tó tuaníi, máajsàk This table, teak	tó tuaníi tham dūaj máajsàk. This table is made of teak.
4. thūaj bajníi, pláatsatik This cup, plastic	thūaj bajníi tham dūaj pláatsatik This cup is made of plastic.

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. klòŋ burìi bajnán,
thooŋ
This cigarette box,
gold | klòŋ burìi bajnán tham dūaj
thooŋ.
This cigarette box is made of
gold. |
| 6. thŭŋ baj nán,
kradaat náŋsýyphim
This bag, newspaper | thŭŋ bajnán tham dūaj
kradaat náŋsýyphim.
This bag is made of newspaper. |

h) Transformation Drill

Pattern 1

1. fŷimyy kháw dii
2. fŷimyy cháaŋ tàtsýa
khonníi dii
3. fŷimyy cháaŋ tàtphóm
khonníi máj dii.
4. fŷimyy cháaŋ thooŋ
khonníi dii.
5. fŷimyy cháaŋ thàajrūup
khonníi máj dii.
6. fŷimyy cháaŋ máaj
khonníi dii.
7. fŷimyy cháaŋ thóm
khonníi dii.

Pattern 2

- kháw fŷimyy dii
His work is good.
- cháaŋ tàtsýa khonníi fŷimyy
dii.
This tailor (dressmaker) is
good.
- cháaŋ tàtphóm khonníi fŷimyy
máj dii.
This barber is not good.
- cháaŋ thooŋ khonníi fŷimyy
dii.
This jeweler is good.
- cháaŋ thàajrūup khonníi fŷimyy
máj dii.
This photographer is not good.
- cháaŋ máaj khonníi fŷimyy dii.
This carpenter is good.
- cháaŋ thóm khonníi fŷimyy dii.
This nielloware maker is good.

THAI BASIC COURSE

8. fĩimyy chãaŋ kèsalàk khonnĩ dii. chãaŋ kèsalàk khonnĩ fĩimyy dii.

This carver is good.

1) Completion Drill

(Complete the sentences with a compound beginning as chãaŋ.)

1. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tham khryãŋryan rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋmãaj).
A person who earns his living by making furniture is called
.....(Answer: a cabinet maker).
2. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tãtphõm rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋthãtphõm).
A person who earns his living by cutting one's hair is called
.....(Answer: a barber).
3. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tãtsyã rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋtãtsyã).
A person who earns his living by making clothes is called
.....(Answer: a tailor).
4. khon thĩi mii aachĩip tham khryãŋthõõŋ rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋthõõŋ).
A person who earns a living by making jewelry or gold ornaments is called.....(Answer: a goldsmith).
5. khon thĩi mii aachĩip thaãŋ kèsalàk rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋ kèsalàk).
A person who earns his living by carving things is called
.....(Answer: a carver).
6. khon thĩi mii aachĩip thaãŋ wĩthhãjú rĩak wãa.....
.....(Answer: chãaŋwĩthhãjú).
A person who earns his living by working in the field of radio is called.....(Answer: a radio repairman).

THAI BASIC COURSE

7. khon thîi mii aachîp thaaj fajfáa rîak wâa.....
(Answer: cháaj fajfáa).

A person who earns his living in the field of electricity is called.....(Answer: an electrician).

j) Sentence Construction Drill

	<u>Pattern 1</u>	<u>Cue</u>	<u>Continued Pattern</u>
	khun ca phàan ráan khǎaj jaa máj	sýy jaa	fàak <u>sýy jaa</u> dûaj.
	Are you going by the drug store?	Buy some medicine.	May I ask you to buy some medicine for me?
1.	khun ca phàan talàat máj	sýy khǒon	fàak <u>sýy khǒon</u> dûaj.
	Are you going to go by the market?	Buy some- thing.	I'd like you to buy something for me.
2.	khun ca wé hǒnkon máj	sýy klǒn thaaaj rûup	fàak <u>sýy klǒn thaaaj rûup sak klǒn</u> dûaj.
	Are you going to stop over in Hongkong?	Buy a camera.	I'd like you to buy a camera for me.
3.	khun ca paj talàat rǎkhráp	sýy kàpkhâaw	fàak <u>sýy kàpkhâaw</u> dûaj.
	You're going to the market?	Buy me some food.	May I ask you to buy some food for me?
4.	khun ca phàan prajsanîi máj	sòn còtmǎaj	fàak <u>sòn còt mǎaj</u> dûaj
	Are you going to go by the post office?	Mail a letter.	Could you mail a letter for me?
5.	khun ca paj ráan kaafɛɛ rýy	sýy kaafɛɛ	fàak <u>sýy kaafɛɛ</u> dûaj.
	You're going to the coffee shop?	Buy some coffee.	Could you get some coffee for me?

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------|--|
| 6. khun ca paj
thanakhaan rŷy | lêek nən | fàak <u>lêek nən</u> dŷaj. |
| You're going to
the bank? | Change money. | Could you change some
money for me? |

k) Response Drill

- | <u>Question</u> | <u>Cue</u> | <u>Response</u> |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. khun ca sŷy araj
paj fàak khaw | nənsŷy dii dii
sák sŷon lêm. | phŷm ca sŷy nənsŷy dii
dii paj fàak khaw sák
sŷon lêm. |
| What are you going
to buy (as a present)
for him? | Two good
books. | I'll buy two good books
for him. |
| 2. khun ca sŷy araj paj
fàak phanrajaa
khun | sŷa sŷaj sŷaj | phŷm ca sŷy sŷa sŷaj
sŷaj paj fàak phanrajaa |
| What are you going
to buy (as a souve-
nir) for your wife? | Beautiful
blouses
(dresses) | I'll buy beautiful
dresses for my wife. |
| 3. weelaa khun klàp paj
bāan, khun ca sŷy
araj paj fàak lŷuk
sǎaw khun | khŷon lêm | phŷm ca sŷy khŷon lêm
paj fàak lŷuksǎaw phŷm. |
| When you go home,
what are you going
to buy (as a souve-
nir) for your daughter? | Toys. | I'm going to buy some
toys for my daughter. |
| 4. weelaa khun klàp
paj myanthat, khun
ca sŷy araj paj
fàak phanrajaa khun | khrŷančaj
fajfáa | phŷm ca sŷy
khrŷančaj fajfáa
paj fàak phanrajaa
phŷm. |
| When you go back to
Thailand, what are
you going to buy (as
a present) for your
wife? | Electrical
appliances | I'll buy some elec-
trical appliances for
my wife. |

THAI BASIC COURSE

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>5. weelaa khun paj tookiaw,
khun ca sýy araj
maa fàak phǒm bǎan.</p> | <p>wíthajú
jǐipùn an
léklék,
nỳn khrỳan</p> | <p>phǒm ca sýy wíthajú
jǐipùn an léklék maa
fàak khun nỳn khrỳan</p> |
| <p>When you go to
Tokyo, what things
are you going to buy
(as souvenirs from
Tokyo) for me?</p> | <p>A rather
small Jap-
anese radio</p> | <p>I'll buy you a rather
small Japanese radio.</p> |

1) Recognition and Familiarization

<u>Question</u>	<u>Response</u>
<p>1. khun rúucàk ráan diidi bǎanmáj Do you know any good stores?</p>	<p>rǎan thaj najlakháp Yes, "Thai" store's the one.</p>
<p>2. rót khǒnkhun jùu thǐnǎj Where is your car?</p>	<p>nǐi najkhráp Right here.</p>
<p>3. khun sǒmsàk khonnǎj Which one is Mr. Somsak?</p>	<p>khonnán najkhráp That one there.</p>
<p>4. khun hěn nǎnsýy phǒm máj Did you see my book?</p>	<p>jùu nǎn najkhráp Right there (Don't you see it?)</p>
<p>5. kháw maa rýplàaw Did he come?</p>	<p>maa, jyyn jùu nǎn najkhráp. Yes, he's standing right there. (Don't you see him?)</p>

m) Recognition and Familiarization Drill

1. khun ca phàan talàat máj. fàak sýy khǒn dūaj.
Are you going to go buy the market? Could you get me something?

THAI BASIC COURSE

2. khun ca wé tookiaw máj. fàak sýy khǒon dûaj.
Are you going to stop over Tokyo? Could I have you buy something for me?
3. khun ca paj sýy kaafes rěhá. fàak sýy dûaj nỳn thûaj.
You are going to buy coffee? Could you get a cup for me too?
4. khun ca paj prajsanii rěhá. fàak sòn còtmăaj dûaj.
You are going to the post office? Could you mail this letter for me?
5. khun ca paj hăa khun cim rě. fàak nánssýy lêmníi paj hâj khaw dûaj.
You are going to see Jim? Could you take this book to him also?
6. khun ca paj ráan khăajphăa rě. chûaj sýy phăa hâj dûaj.
You are going to the fabric shop? Could you buy some material for me too?
7. khun ca paj bân kháw, châj máj. chûaj bòok kháw dûaj wăa phǒm paj mǎj dâj.
You are going to his house, aren't you? Please tell him that I can't go.
8. khun ca paj hăa naajnăa rě. chûaj thăam kháw dûaj wăa bân lănnán khăachăw thăwrăj.
You are going to see the agent? Please ask him (also) how much the rent for that house is.
9. khun ca hăa khun prasít rě. chûaj aw nánssýy lêmníi paj hâj kháw dûaj.
You are going to see Mr. Prasit? Please take this book to him also.

THAI BASIC COURSE

40.5 EXERCISES

1. Pairs of students will ask and answer questions of each other eliciting information like the following:
 - (a) Does one student have as much/many as \$3,000; 50 baht; 2,000 books; etc.
 - (b) Does one student have as much as \$3,000; 36,000 baht; 40,000 baht; \$100,000 deposited in the bank?
2. Two students discuss their monthly salary. The first member of the pair indicates that he finds his salary quite small. The second student is impressed by the size of it.
3. Two students discuss the length, size, or cost of various objects. In each case one takes the position that the amount given is not very much, while the other takes the position that it is quite a lot.
4. Discuss the monthly bill for rent, gas, water, and electricity in the same manner as in 3.
5. Student A asks to borrow various objects (\$10, a pen, 2 books, his car, a tape recorder, a typewriter, etc.). Student B indicates that he will lend A some of the items, but not all.
6. Student C asks Student B what Student A wanted to borrow and if he lent these things to him. When B indicates that he lent him some of the things, C asks why he didn't lend A the other objects.
7. Student A asks Student B what material some object (a table, a chair, a shirt, a glass, a tie, etc.) is made of. B responds. Then A asks him if it is hand-made or machine made.
8. Students will discuss the craftsmanship of various kinds in different countries (woodcarving in Germany, nielloware in Thailand, etc.)

THAI BASIC COURSE

9. Students will find out from the instructor what the Thais call sculptors, watch repairmen, hair dressers, weavers, boat builders, house painters, carpenters, printers, etc.
10. Student A asks Student B if he is going to some particular place. When B indicates that he is, A asks him to do some thing (buy something, etc.) for him, indicating that since he is going there anyway it won't be any trouble for him to do him a favor.
11. One student asks another what he plans to buy (as a present) in Thailand for his mother, or his older sister, or his material aunt, or some other relative.
12. Student A asks about the location of some object, or the identity of some person in the classroom. Student B indicates his surprise and points it out to him.
13. Student A plays the part of a bank teller and Student B that of a customer. They discuss withdrawing and depositing money in the bank.

(Below is a facsimile of a Thai check.)

	เลขที่
ธนาคารแห่งประเทศไทย	
จ่ายให้	ป
จำนวนเงิน	บาท

THAI BASIC COURSE

40.6 VOCABULARY

aachfip	profession
àt	to tape, to copy
əə	by the way
(khít òok (nýk)	out (a completive verb)
bèek	to withdraw (money), to requisition (as from a storeroom)
bèek nən	to get money (from the bank)
châaŋ-	A person who has skill in some craft or trade. It is the head noun in many noun compounds.
châaŋ kèesalàk (khon)	carver
châaŋ máaj (khon)	carpenter
châaŋ tàtphǒm (khon)	barber
châaŋ tàtsýa (khon)	tailor
châaŋ thàajrûup (khon)	photographer
châaŋ thǒm (khon)	nielloware maker
châaŋ thoŋ (khon)	jeweler
chaam salàt (baj, lûuk)	salad bowl
chiaw rǎ	that's a lot of (something)
ciŋ ná	That's true.
dûaj	also, too, as well
fàak	to deposit; to ask a person to carry on some business for you

THAI BASIC COURSE

fàak nən	to deposit money (in the bank)
fǎi myy	manual skill, craftsmanship
hâj jyym	to let someone borrow, to lend
hônkon	Hong Kong
jé/jéjé	to be a whole lot, a great deal, plenty; plentifully
kεε	he, she, they (in the third person) for children, intimates, persons of equal status
kèssalàk	to carve
khǎnnən	silver bowl
kháw	he, she, they (third person) not intimate, about equal status
khít òok	to figure out
khǎo jyym/jyym	to borrow
khǎon lēn (jàan)	toys
khryān (cák) (an)	machine
khryān àtthéep (an)	tape recorder
khÿn nən	to cash a check
kòon	used to emphasize the fact that the action is to be of very short duration
kracòk (baan, phèn)	'glass'
lèek	'iron, steel'
lòot fajfáa (lòot)	light bulb
máaj	wood

THAI BASIC COURSE

máaj sàk	teak
myy (myy)	hand
naajók naajók rátthamontri	(thân) prime minister (short form) prime minister (official name)
naanaaphan	Nanaphan (name of a shop)
nýk òok	think about, can recall, can remember; to be able to recall to memory
ṅenbèek	a deposit (in a bank)
phaa	to take, escort
pláatsatìk	plastic
phêṅ	just (immediately before)
rɛɛṅthian	watt (measure of electricity)
sýnkháa thaj	Thai merchandise
syy...{ paj maa ...fàak	to buy something as a gift or souvenir for someone
tân	as much as, as many as
tàt	to cut
thàaj rûup	take pictures
thàanfajchaaj (kôn)	flashlight batteries
tham dūaj.....	made of
thân	he, she, they (third person) least intimate, superior status (rank or age) to speaker
thǒm	to make nielloware
thoɔṅ	gold
thýṅ	is used to indicate that a certain point, degree, or amount has been reached

FSI Language Publications Available from
 Superintendent of Documents
 Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	\$2.25	* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	\$2.50	* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	\$2.00	* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	\$3.75
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)		* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	\$2.25
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)		* Twi	(Units 1-20)	\$1.25
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	\$1.75	* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	\$2.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12)	\$4.00	* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	\$1.50
	(Units 13-24)		* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	\$2.75
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	\$2.75			
* German	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00			
* German	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75			
* Greek	(Vol. I)	\$1.75	* Finnish Graded Reader		\$4.50
* Greek	(Vol. II)	\$1.00	* French Supplemental Exercises		\$3.25
* Greek	(Vol. III)	\$2.00	Hindi-An Active Introduction		
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	\$5.00	* Hungarian Graded Reader		\$3.75
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	\$2.00	Indonesian Newspaper Reader		\$1.75
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	\$1.75	* Luganda Pretraining Program		
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	\$2.75	Modern Written Arabic		\$4.00
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	\$2.25	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Korean	(Vol. I)	\$3.00	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)		\$0.75
* Korean	(Vol. II)	\$4.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Lao	(Vol. I)		(Student Workbook-Vol. I)		\$2.25
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	\$2.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	\$2.25	(Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)		
* Moré	(Units 1-48)	\$1.75	* Spanish Programmatic Course		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	\$3.50	(Student Workbook-Vol. II)		
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	\$4.00	* Swahili General Conversation		\$0.75
Shona	(Units 1-49)	\$2.50	* Swahili Geography		\$0.65
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15)	\$12.25	Thai Reference Grammar		\$1.25
	(Units 16-30)		Turkish Graded Reader		
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	\$3.25	Vietnamese Familiarization		
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	\$4.00	Course		\$1.75
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	\$3.00	Yoruba Intermediate Texts		\$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.